



Class F 23

Book G 66

Copyright N^o _____

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT:

12
342

31213
22

THE

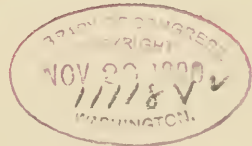
Publications of the Prince Society.

Established May 25th, 1858.

SIR FERDINANDO GORGES

AND

HIS PROVINCE OF MAINE.



6

Boston:

PRINTED FOR THE SOCIETY,

By JOHN WILSON AND SON.

1890.

Monograph

TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY COPIES.



Fold-out Placeholder

This fold-out is being digitized, and will be inserted at a future date.

pars.

N OF THE TOW

ereof. with the wor
Seige: A 1643

St Stephens

The Kuier of Lmer

Corn

Enemy

Insworth

Mulbrook

Hynton maner

SIR FERDINANDO GORGES

AND HIS

PROVINCE OF MAINE.

INCLUDING

THE BRIEF RELATION, THE BRIEF NARRATION, HIS
DEFENCE, THE CHARTER GRANTED TO HIM,
HIS WILL, AND HIS LETTERS.

EDITED WITH A

M E M O I R

AND

HISTORICAL ILLUSTRATIONS

BY

JAMES PHINNEY BAXTER, A.M.

99

VOL. II.

Boston:

PUBLISHED BY THE PRINCE SOCIETY.

1890.

F23
.G66

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1890, by
THE PRINCE SOCIETY,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.



PREFATORY NOTE.



WISH to acknowledge my indebtedness to Josiah Pierce, Esq., of London, a fellow-countryman, for carefully prepared copies of title-pages of the Gorges tracts in the British Museum. While preparing my notes on this subject, I made a personal examination of all the copies of the tracts which I could find in London and in this country, in order to settle the question whether all the copies extant included Edward Johnson's work; not that this would be conclusive proof of the position assumed by me in the discussion of the subject, but I thought it might serve the purpose of circumstantial evidence in favor of Gorges.

In speaking of the Journal of the Voyage to Sagadahoc by the Popham colonists, I have not referred to the Rev. B. F. DeCosta's discovery of this important manuscript at Lambeth Palace, for the reason that I possessed a manuscript

copy of the Journal, and had not examined Dr. DeCosta's printed copy of it until this volume was in print. It seems proper, therefore, that I should refer to this seeming neglect to award to Dr. DeCosta the credit which is his due. I also desire to correct the word "brother's," inadvertently used for "kinsman's," in Vol. I. p. 88, second line.

J. P. B.

PORTLAND, MAINE,
61 Deering Street.





TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
A BRIEF NARRATION OF THE ORIGINAL UNDERTAKINGS OF THE ADVANCEMENT OF PLANTATIONS INTO THE PARTS OF AMERICA. ESPECIALLY, SHEWING THE BEGINNING, PRO- GRESS, AND CONTINUANCE OF THAT OF NEW-ENGLAND. .	1-81
A BREEFE ANSWER TO CERTAYNE FALSE, SLANDEROUS, AND IDLE OBJECTIONS MADE AGAYNST S ^R FERD. GORGES, KNIGHTE .	83-121
CHARTER OF THE PROVINCE OF MAINE	123-148
THE WILL OF SIR FERDINANDO GORGES	149-150
GENEALOGICAL NOTES ON THE FAMILY OF GORGES	151-174
THE LITERARY WORK OF FERDINANDO GORGES	175-185
SKETCH OF THOMAS GORGES	186-190
THE WILL OF THOMAS GORGES	190-192
DOCUMENTS RELATING TO THE PROVINCE OF MAINE.	193-221
THE LETTERS OF SIR FERDINANDO GORGES.	223-251
<hr/>	
INDEX	253-270





LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
MAP OF PLYMOUTH	<i>Frontispiece</i>
MAP OF THE NEW ENGLAND COAST, A.D. 1650	184



A
BRIEFE NARRATION
OF THE
Originall Undertakings
OF THE
ADVANCEMENT
OF
PLANTATIONS
Into the parts of
AMERICA.
Eſpecially,
Shewing the begining, progreſs
and continuance of that of
New-England.

Written by the right Worſhipfull, Sir *Ferdinando Gorges*
Knight and Governour of the Fort and Iſland of
Plymouth in DEVONSHIRE.

L O N D O N :

Printed by *E. Brudenell*, for *Nath. Brook* at the
Angell in *Corn-hill*. 1658.



CHAPTER I.

OF THE First Seifin Poffeffion AND NAME OF VIRGINIA.



That Sir *Humphrey Gilbert*, and Sir *Richard Geenvile*,²⁸⁶ and many others, Noble spirits of our Nation attempted to settle a Plantation in the parts of *America*, in the Reigne of Queen *Elizabeth* is sufficiently published in the painfull collections of Mr. *Hackluit*, together with the variable successes, of those undertakers of whose labour and charge there remained

²⁸⁶ Sir Richard Grenville was a Cornishman, and a relative of Raleigh and Gilbert. He served as a volunteer in the German army against the Turks at the early age of sixteen, and upon his

return to his native country, was sent to Ireland, where he served as a commander. In 1571 he was in Parliament as a representative of Cornwall, and received the honor of Knighthood from the

4 *A Description of New-England.*

mained no other fruit then the Primor feifin and royal poffeffion taken thereof, as of right belonging to the [2] Crown of *England*, giving it the name of *Virginia*, in the memory and Honour of that Virgin Queen, the wonder of her Sex; by whose Authority thofe attempts took their firft life, and dyed not till the actors ended their daies, and their cheife fupporters, and advancers tryed with fo many fruitlefle attempts and endlefle charge without hope of profit to follow for many ages to come; fo that, that attempt had its end, as many others fince that of greater hopes and better grounded, but what fhall we fay?

As

the fair hand of the Virgin Queen. He became warmly interefted in the plans of Raleigh and Gilbert for colonizing America, and accompanied, as commander of the fleet of feveral fhips, the firft colony fent by Raleigh from Plymouth, on April 9th, 1585, to colonize Virginia. Although in command of a peaceful band of colonifts, Grenville could not refrain his military ardor when, touching at the Weft Indies, he faw two Spanifh frigates quietly lying at anchor, and, without ftopping to confider the nature of his command, he fell upon them with fuch fury that they were forced to furrender to him. After this exploit he refumed his voyage, and barely efcaping fhipwreck upon Cape Fear, as he called the headland which came fo near caufing the deftruction of his fleet, he fucceeded in landing his colony fuccefffully at Roanoke late in June. Leaving his colony there, he returned to England, capturing on his way a wealth-laden carrack of Spain; and when he reached the port of Plymouth, on the 18th of September, he was welcomed as a hero. Gathering fupplies for his colony, he returned to America, but found that his colonifts had taken

advantage of an opportunity to return to England, and had deferted Roanoke but a few weeks before his arrival. Not difcouraged, and determined to hold poffeffion of the country, he left fifteen men at Roanoke and returned to England. In 1591 he was made vice-admiral, and in command of five fhips attacked a Spanifh fleet of fifty-three fhips off the Azores. During the unequal battle which followed, the brave Grenville was desperately wounded, but refufed to be borne below, and his wounds were dressed upon deck, where he could direct the management of his fleet; but while making terrible havoc in the Spanifh fleet, he was wounded the fecond time by a fhot through his body, and this time mortally, which caufed the furrender of his little fleet. Thus fell, at the age of fifty-one years, one of the braveft naval commanders which England, always rich in naval heroes, ever produced. Gorges well denominates him and his kinfman Gilbert "noble fpirits." Such indeed they were.

As no correftions in fpelling have been attempted, the name is left here as in the original edition of the *Narration*, of which this is a counterpart.

As nothing is done but according to the time fore decreed by Gods sacred Providence, so doth he provide wherewith to accomplish the same in the fulnesse of it, but the mirror of Queens being summoned to the possession of a more Glorious Reigne, left her terrestriall Crown to her Successor *James*, the Sixth of *Scotland*, to whom of right it did belong.²⁸⁷

CHAPTER II.

The reasons and meanes of renewing the undertakings of Plantations in America.

THIS great Monarch Gloriously ascending his Throne, being borne to greatnesse above his Ancestors, to whom all submitted as to another *Salomon*, for wisdom and justice,²⁸⁸ as well as for that he brought with him another Crown,

²⁸⁷ The Queen died on the 24th of March, 1603, the last day of the year.

²⁸⁸ Sir Ferdinando employs the phraseology of the courtier, in this mention of the royal father of the reigning sovereign, who had bestowed upon him so many favors. The wisdom and justice referred to may be briefly illustrated by the following, selected from many similar anecdotes. It is from a letter of Lord Thomas Howard, a favorite of the King, to Sir John Harrington in 1611.

MY GOOD AND TRUSTY KNIGHT, — If you have good will and good health to perform what I shall commend, you may set forward for courtes, whenever it suiteth your own conveniency: the King hath often enquired after you, — He doth wondrously covet learned discourse, of which you can

furnish out ample means; he doth admire good fashion in cloaths, I pray you give good heed hereunto. — In your discourse you must not dwell too long on one subject, and touch but lightly on religion. Do not of yourself say "This is good or bad" but, "If it were your Majestie's good opinion, I myself should think so and so." — I will advise one thing: — the roan jennet, whereon the King rideth every day, must not be forgotten to be praised; and the good furniture above all, what lost a great man much notice the other day. A noble did come in suit of a place, and saw the King mounting the roan; delivered his petition, which was heeded and read, but no answer was given. The noble departed, and came to courtes the nexte day, and got no answer again. The Lord Treasurer was then pressed to move the King's pleasure touching the petition. When the King was asked for answer thereto,

6 *A Description of New-England.*

Crown, whereby those Kingdomes that had so long contended for rights and liberties, perhaps oft times pretended rather to satisfie their present purposes, then that justice required it; But such is the frailty of humane nature as not

to be content with what we possesse, but strives by all [3] meanes to enthrall the weaker that is necessitated to prevent the worst, though by such meanes sometimes to their greater ruine; With this Union there was also a generall peace concluded between the State, and the King of *Spaine*, the then onely enemy of our Nation and Religion, whereby our Men of war by Sea and Land were left destitute of all hope of imployment under their owne Prince; And therefore there was liberty given to them (for preventing other evils) to be entertained as Mercenaries under what Prince or State they pleased; A liberty granted upon shew of reason, yet of a dangerous consequence, when our friends and Allyes that had long travelled with us in one and the same quarrell, should now finde our swords sharpened as well against, as for them; Howsoever reason of State approved thereof, the World forbore not to censure it as their affections led them, others grew jealous what might be the issue, especially when it was found that by such liberty the sword was put into their hands, the Law had prohibited them the use;²⁸⁹ Some there were not liking to

thereto, he said, in some wrath, "Shall a King give heed to a dirty paper, when a beggar noteth not his gilt stirrups?" Now it fell out, that the King had new furniture when the noble saw him in the courte-yard; but he was overcharged with confusion, and passed by admiring the dressing of the horse. Thus, good knight, our noble failed in his suit.

²⁸⁹ So many had been bred to the trade of war, which was regarded by the people and even by political economists as being quite as legitimate as any other occupation, that a state of peace was looked upon in England as a public calamity, since it caused so many to be thrown out of employment. By the peace

to be servants to forreigne States, thought it better became them to put in practice the reviving resolution of those free Spirits, that rather chose to spend themselves in seeking a new World, then servilely to be hired but as Slaughtering in the quarrels of Strangers; This resolution being stronger then their meanes to put it into execution, they were forced to let it rest as a dreame, till God should give the meanes to stir up the inclination of such a power able to bring it to life; And so it pleased our great God that there hapned to come into the harbour of *Plymouth* (where I then commanded) one Captain *Waymouth*²⁹⁰ that had been employed by the Lord *Arundell* of *Warder*²⁹¹ for the discovery of the North-west passage.

But

peace, which Gorges deplores, thousands were cast upon their own resources for a living, and, having been taught nothing but the art of pillage, many sought employment under foreign princes, who were engaged in war, while many others turned their attention to piracy and robbery, making it extremely dangerous to travel in or about England, by sea or land. This condition of affairs it became necessary to meet by a summary, and what often appears to the casual reader to be a cruel, application of the criminal law.

²⁹⁰ Captain George Waymouth, already noticed, and concerning whom *vide* Rosier's *Relation of Waymouth's Voyage*, by Henry S. Burrage, D.D., Portland, Maine, 1887.

²⁹¹ Sir Thomas Arundel was a Roman Catholic nobleman, and was created a Count of the Holy Roman Empire on the 14th of December, 1595, by the Emperor Rodolph II. as a reward for gallantry against the Turks, while serving in Hungary as a volunteer in the Imperial army. Among other brave

acts he stormed the Water Tower, near Strigonium, and bore away the banner of the enemy with his own hand. Upon his return to England he met with a cold reception from Elizabeth on account of his acceptance of a foreign title, and by her orders was thrown into prison. After a lengthy correspondence between the Emperor and the Queen, and an humble "Apologie for accepting the Honour of *Comes Imperij*," he was pardoned. In addition to the title of Count of the Holy Roman Empire, which was hereditary and is enjoyed by the head of the family at the present day, he had bestowed upon him by the English crown, on May 4th, 1605, the title of Baron of Wardour. He was interested in discovery and colonization in connection with his father-in-law the Earl of Southampton, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, and others. He died November 7th, 1639. Gorges supposes Waymouth to have been employed by Arundel for the discovery of the north-west passage, that having been made the ostensible object of his voyage in order

8 *A Description of New-England.*

But falling fhort of his Courfe, hapned into a River on the Coaft of *America*, called *Pemmaquid*,²⁹² from whence he brought five of the Natives, three of whose names were *Manida*, *Skettwarroes*, and *Tasquantum*,²⁹³ whom I feized upon; they were all of one Nation, but of feverall parts, and feverall Families; This accident muft be acknowledged the meanes under God of putting on foote, and giving life to all our Plantations, as by the enfuing difcourfe will manifefly appeare.

[4]

CHAPTER III.

Of the ufe I made of the Natives.

AFTER I had thofe people fometimes in my Cuftody, I obferved in them an inclination to follow the example of the better fort; And in all their carriages manifefit fhewes
of

order to keep the true object of it from public knowledge. This was more eafily accomplished in this cafe, fince Waymouth had already been employed by the Eaft India Company in a voyage to difcover the northweft paffage, an account of which undertaking may be found in *Narratives of Voyages towards the North Weft*, by Thomas Rundall, Efq., London, 1849, pp. 51-71, 238 *et paffim*. The correſpondence between the Emperor and the Queen relating to Arundel may be found in Rymer's *Fædera*, Tom. XVI. p. 284, and Arundel's *Apologie*, in *Deſiderata Curioſa*, Vol. II. p. 280.

²⁹² This point of land on the weſtern ſide of the entrance to the George's River, called by the French Pemquit, and from the earlieſt date by the Engliſh Pemaquid, at one time promiſed to

be the centre of Engliſh colonial power in New England. According to the Rev. Paul Coffin, the name ſignifies, in the aboriginal tongue, "a point of land running into the ſea." *Vide Collections of the Maine Hiſtorical Society*, Vol. IV. p. 397.

²⁹³ Roſier calls the firſt of theſe Indians Maneddo and the ſecond Skicowaros, and denominates them gentlemen, by which he means that they were perſons of ſome importance among their people, probably petty chiefs or ſachems; but he does not, as before ſtated, mention Tiſquantum. Gorges may therefore be in error in ſtating that Tiſquantum was one of Waymouth's captives. He certainly is in error in making him of the ſame tribe as the others, ſince we know that he belonged to Cape Cod.

of great civility farre from the rudeness of our common people; And the longer I conversed with them, the better hope they gave me of those parts where they did inhabit, as proper for our uses, especially when I found what goodly Rivers, stately Islands, and safe harbours those parts abounded with, being the speciall marks I levelled at as the onely want our Nation met with in all their Navigations along that Coast, and having kept them full three yeares, I made them able to set me downe what great Rivers ran up into the Land, what Men of note were seated on them, what power they were of, how allyed, what enemies they had, and the like of which in his proper place.

CHAPTER IV.

Captain Henry Challoung sent to make his residence in the Countrey till supplies came.

THose credible informations the Natives had given me of the condition and state of their Countrey, made me send away a Ship furnished with Men and all necessities, provisions convenient for the service intended²⁹⁴ [5] under the command of Captain *Henry Challoung*, a gentleman of a good Family, industrious, and of fair condition, to whom I gave such directions and instructions for his better direction as I knew proper for his use, and my satisfaction, being grounded upon the information I had of the Natives, fending

²⁹⁴ This was in August, 1606. More Challons may be found in the Letters of particulars concerning this voyage of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, *postea*.

fending two of them with him to aver the same, Binding both the Captain his Master, and company strictly to follow it; Or to expect the miscarriage of the Voyage to be laid unto their Charge, Commanding them by all meanes to keep the northerly gage, as high as Cape Britton, till they had discovered the Maine, and then to beate it up to the Southward, as the Coast tended, till they found by the Natives they were neer the place they were assigned unto; Though this were a direction contrary to the opinion of our best Sea-men of these times; yet I knew many reasons perswading me thereunto, as well as for that I understood the Natives themselves to be exact Pilots for that Coast, having been accustomed to frequent the same, both as Fishermen and in passing along the shoare to seek their enemies, that dwelt to the Northward of them; But it is not in the wit of Man to prevent the providence of the most High.

For this Captain being some 100 leagues of the Island of *Canara*, fell sick of a Feaver, and the windes being Westerly, his company shaped their course for the *Indies*, and coming to *St. John De Porteriko*, the Captain himselfe went a shoare for the recovery of his health, whiles the Company took in water, and such other provision as they had present use of, expending some time there, hunting after such things as best pleased themselves; That ended, they set their course to fall with their owne height they were directed unto; By which meanes they met the *Spanish* Fleet that came from *Havana*, by whom they were taken and carried into *Spaine*, where their Ship and goods were confiscate, themselves made Prisoners, the voyage overthrowne, and both my Na-
tives

A Description of New-England. I I

tives lost;²⁹⁵ This the gaine of their breach of Order, which afterwards observed, brought all our Shippes to their desired Ports; The affliction of the Captain and his Company [6] put the Lord Chief Justice *Popham* to charge, and myselfe to trouble in procuring their liberties, which was not suddainly obtained.

CHAPTER V.

The Lord Chief Justice dispatching Captaine Prin from Bristol for the supply of Captaine Challounge.

SHORTLY upon my fending away of Captaine *Challounge*, it pleased the Lord Chiefe Justice according to his promise to dispatch Captain *Prin* from *Bristoll*, with hope to have found Captaine *Challounge*, where by his instructions he was assigned, who observing the same, happily arrived there, but not hearing by any meanes what became of him, after he had made a perfect discovery of all those Rivers and Harbours he was informed of by his instructions, (the season of the yeare requiring his return) brings with him the most exact discovery of that Coast that ever came to my hands since, and indeed he was the best able to performe it of any I met withall to this present, which with his relation of the Country, wrought such an impression in the Lord Chiefe Justice, and us all that were his associates, that (notwithstanding our first disaster) we fet up our resolutions to follow it with effect, and that upon better grounds, for as yet, our authority was but in motion.

CHAP. VI.

²⁹⁵ "Both my Natives;" yet he has just spoken of *three*. In the *Briefe Relation, antea*, he tells us there were but two, which is probably correct, and calls them *Maneday* and *Affecomet*.

[7]

CHAPTER VI.

Of his Lordships care in procuring his MAJESTIES Authority for settling two COLONIES.

IN this Interim his Lordship failed not to interest many of the Lords and others to be Petitioners to his MAJESTY for his Royall Authority, for settling two Plantations upon the coasts of *America*, by the names of the *First* and *Second* Colonie; the first to be undertaken by certaine Noble Men, Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants in and about the City of *London*; the second by certaine Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants in the western parts: This being obtained, theirs of *London* made a very hopefull entrance into their designe, sending away under the command of Sir *Thomas Gates*,²⁹⁶ Sir *George Summers*,²⁹⁷ and many other Gentlemen of quality, a very great and hopefull Plantation
to

²⁹⁶ Sir Thomas Gates was at this time in the service of the United Netherlands, and in command of a body of English soldiers who had entered foreign service on account of the peace then existing between England and other powers. He was granted a year's absence by the States General on April 24th, 1608, and his pay continued during his absence. The fleet sailed from Plymouth on the first day of June, 1609. On a subsequent voyage to America, Sir Thomas was so unfortunate as to lose his wife, who had accompanied him to the New World with his two daughters. Mary and Elizabeth.

²⁹⁷ Sir George Somers, when appointed Admiral of Virginia, to reside in and govern the Colony, was a mem-

ber of Parliament and enjoying the luxury and ease of a wealthy English gentleman; but, as it was said of him in another instance, "the good old gentleman, out of his love and zeal not minding but most cheerfully and resolutely," left the comforts of his ancestral home, to endure the hardships attendant upon founding a new state, that he might advance the power and glory of his country. The early annals of Virginia tell us of his trials and sufferings, which in 1610 ended in his death in the Bermudas. His body was embalmed and, after being borne across the sea, was entombed with military honors at Whitchurch in Dorsetshire, where he had been wont to worship in his prosperous days.

to repofseffe the parts of *Virginia*, Sir *Thomas Gates* happily arrived in the Bay of *Jeffepiock*,²⁹⁸ in which navigation Sir *George Summers* unhappily cast away his Ship upon the Islands of *Bermathaes*, since called the *Summer Islands*, in memory of him that deserved the honour for the great paines, care, and industry he used out of the carkasse of his wracked Ship, to build a New Barque sufficient for the transportation of himselfe, distressed company, and provision to finde out Sir *Thomas Gates* who timely arrived to the wonder of the rest of his comforts.

[8]

CHAPTER VII.

The dispatch of the first Plantation, for the second Colonie sent from Plymouth.

BY the same Authority all things fully agreed upon between both the Colonies the Lord cheife justice his friends and associates of the West Country, sent from *Plymouth* Captain *Popham* as president for that employment with Captain *Rawley Gilbert*, and divers other Gentlemen of note in three saile of ships²⁹⁹ with 100. land-men, for the seizing such a place as they were directed unto by the counsell of that Colonie, who departed from the coast of *England* the one and thirtieth day of *May*, Anno 1607. and arrived at their Rendezvouz the 8th of *August* following; as soone as the President had taken notice of the place, and given order for landing the provisions, he dispatcht away Captain *Gilbert*

²⁹⁸ The Chesapeake, the largest bay on the coast of the United States.

as there were but two ships, namely, the *Mary and John* and the *Gift of God*.

²⁹⁹ This may have been a misprint,

Gilbert with *Skitwarres* his guide for the through discovery of the rivers and habitations of the Natives, by whom he was brought to severall of them where he found civill entertainment, and kind respects far from brutish or Savage natures, so as they suddainely became familiar friends, especially by the meanes of *Dehamda*, and *Skitwarrers*, who had been in *England*, *Dehamda* being sent by the Lord cheife Justice with Captain *Prin* and *Skitwarres* by me in company,³⁰⁰ so as the President was earnestly intreated by *Sassenow*, *Aberemet*, and others the principall *Sagamores* (as they call their great Lords) to go to the *Bashabas*, who it seemes was their King, and held a State agreeable, expecting that all strangers should have their addresse to him, not he to them.³⁰¹

[9] To whom the president would have gone after severall invitations, but was hindred by crosse winds and foul weather, so as he was forced to return back, without making good what he had promised, much to the greife of those *Sagamores*, that were to attend him, the *Bashabas* notwithstanding

³⁰⁰ These natives are not alluded to in either of the accounts of Martin Pring's voyage, which shows us how carelessly these narratives were written; indeed, the indefiniteness with which early writers outlined events, and the careless manner in which they omitted important details, perplex the seeker for historic truth to a degree sometimes painful. From this statement it would appear that *Dehamda*, elsewhere called *Tahanedo*, but more properly *Ntahanada*, and *Skettwarroes*, having been sent with Pring to New England, and having returned home with him, had both accompanied the Popham Colony to the New World. Such, however, according to Strachey, is not the fact, as *Ntahanada* was left

with his people when Pring returned to England, and, when the Popham colony arrived at the Sagadahoc with *Skettwarroes*, was in command of his tribe. When one knows this, it is not difficult to reconcile the ambiguous statement of Gorges with the fact, as in other similar cases.

³⁰¹ If Sir Ferdinando Gorges had not used the word *the* before *Bashabas*, or as elsewhere spelt by him *Bashaba*, we should have been spared much erroneous writing. The successor of this chief was doubtless the *Sassenow* here mentioned, called by Champlain *Sasinou* and *Anassou* in the same chapter, and by Lescarbot and Biard *Asticou*.

notwithstanding hearing of his misfortune, sent his own Son to visit him, and to beat a trade with him for furs. How it succeeded, I could not understand, for that the ships were to be dispatched away for *England*, the Winter being already come; for it was the 15. day of *December* before they set faile to return, who brought with them the successe of what had past in that imployment, which so soon as it came to the Lord cheife justice hands, he gave out order to the Councell for sending them back with supplies necessary.³⁰²

CHAPTER VIII.

The sending supplies to the Colonie, and the unhappie death of the Lord cheife justice before their departure.

THE supplies being furnished and all things ready onely attending for a faire wind, which hapned not before the news of the chiefe justice death was posted to them³⁰³ to be transported to the discomfort of the poor Planters, but the ships arriving there in good time,³⁰⁴ was a great refreshing to those that had had their store-house and most of their provisions burnt the Winter before.

Besides

³⁰² As already stated, this *Narration* was written by Gorges many years after the occurrence of the events spoken of; hence, as might be reasonably expected, there are obscurities and errors to be frequently found in it. His account of the return of the ships has hitherto misled his readers, and doubt has been thrown, by this statement relative to Chief Justice Popham, upon the date of

that jurist's death, which occurred many months before the return of the first ship from the Sagadahoc. Had Sir Ferdinando said, "Sir Francis Popham's," instead of "the Lord cheife justice," it would have saved his readers much perplexing research and discussion.

³⁰³ *Vide antea*, Vol. I. p. 87.

³⁰⁴ *Vide antea*, Vol. I. p. 88.

Besides that they were strangely perplexed with the great and unseasonable cold they suffered with that extremity, as the like hath not been heard of since, and it seemes, was universall, it being the same yeare, that our *Thames* were

so lockt up that they built their boates upon it, and [10] sould provisions of severall sorts to those that delighted

in the Novelties of the times, but the miseries they had past, were nothing to that they suffered by the disastrous news they received of the death of the Lord cheif justice, that suddainely followed the death of their President,³⁰⁵ but the latter was not so strange, in that he was well stricken in years before he went, and had long been an infirme man. Howsoever heartned by hopes, willing he was to dye in acting something that might be serviceable to God, and honourable to his Country, but that of the death of the cheife justice was such a corrasive to all, as struck them with despaire of future remedy, and it was the more augmented, when they heard of the Sir *John Gilbert*,³⁰⁶ Elder brother of *Ralph Gilbert* that was then their President, a man worthy to be beloved of them all for his industry, and care for their well being;³⁰⁷ The President was to return
to

³⁰⁵ He died on February 5th, 1607, and Gorges says that the news of the death of the Lord Chief Justice suddenly followed. This is doubtless correct, as the colonists must have received the startling news of their patron's death by the first of the three ships sent with provisions to the Colony.

³⁰⁶ This statement, which has been so misunderstood, takes proper shape when read with a true knowledge of the facts in mind. The news of Sir John Gilbert's death, it is quite plain, reached

them *after* the news of the death of the Lord Chief Justice, and we know that Sir John Gilbert's death did not occur until July 5th, 1608, more than twelve months after the death of the former; hence the later news reached them only when the last ship despatched by Gorges to the relief of the Colony arrived in the autumn of 1608.

³⁰⁷ This is quite a different estimate of Raleigh Gilbert from that given of him by Sir Ferdinando Gorges to Sir Robert Cecil on December 3d, 1607,
when

to fettle the state his Brother had left him, upon which all resolved to quit the place, and with one consent to away, by which means all our former hopes were frozen to death, though Sir *Francis Popham* could not so give it over, but continued to send thither severall years after in hope of better fortunes, but found it fruitlesse, and was necessitated at last to sit down with the losse he had already undergone.

CHAPTER IX.

My resolution not to abandon the prosecution of the businesse, in my opinion so well grounded.

ALTHOUGH I were interested in all those misfortunes, and found it wholly given over by the body of the adventurers, aswell for that they had lost the principall support of the designe, as also that the Country it selfe was branded by the returne of the Plantation, as being over cold, and in respect of that, not habitable by our Nation.

Besides, they understood it to be a taske too great for particular persons to undertake, though the Country it selfe, the Rivers, Havens, Harbours, upon that coast might in time prove profitable to us.

These last acknowledgements bound me confidently to prosecute my first resolution, not doubting but *GOD* would effect that which Man despaired of, as for those reasons, the causes

when the facts relating to Gilbert's connection with the Colony were fresh in mind. We can only reconcile this discrepancy in the two estimates by as-

suming that Sir Ferdinando had been brought, by a better acquaintance with the man, to correct his first opinion of him.

causes of others discouragements, the first onely was given to me, in that I had lost so Noble a Friend, and my Nation so worthy a Subject. As for the coldnesse of the Clyme, I had had too much experience in the World to be frighted with such a blast, as knowing many great Kingdomes and large Territories more northerly seated, and by many degrees colder than the Clyme from whence they came, yet plentifully inhabited, and divers of them stored with no better commodities from Trade and Commerce than those parts afforded, if like Industry, Art, and Labour be used, for the last I had no reason greatly to despaire of meanes when *GOD* should be pleased by our ordinary frequenting that Country, to make it appeare, it would yeild both profit and content to as many as aimed thereat, these being truly (for the most part) the motives that all men labour, howsoever otherwise adjoynd with faire colours and goodly shadows.

[12]

CHAPTER X.

A resolution to put new life into that scattered and lacerated Body.

Finding I could no longer be seconded by others, I became an owner of a Ship my selfe fit for that imployment, and under colour of fishing and trade, I got a Master and company for her, to which I sent *Vines*³⁰⁸ and others my owne servants with their provision for trade and discovery, appointing them to leave the Ship and Ships Company for to follow their businesse in the usuall place, (for I knew they would

³⁰⁸ Richard Vines, concerning whom *vide antea*, note 177.

would not be drawn to seek by any meanes) by these and the help of those Natives formerly sent over, I came to be truly informed of so much as gave me assurance that in time I should want no undertakers, though as yet I was forced to hire Men to stay there the Winter Quarter at extreme rates, and not without danger, for that the War had consumed the Bashaba,³⁰⁹ and the most of the great Sagamores, with such Men of action as followed them, and those that remained were fore afflicted with the Plague, for that the Country was in a manner left void of Inhabitants; Notwithstanding, *Vines* and the rest with him that lay in the Cabbins with those People that dyed some more, some lesse, mightily, (blessed be *GOD* for it) not one of them ever felt their heads to ache while they stayed there; and this course I held some years together, but nothing to my private profit, for what I got one way I spent another, so that I began to grow weary of that business as not for my turne till better times.

[13]

CHAPTER XI.

Captain Harles comming to me with a new proposition of other hopes.

WHILE I was labouring by what meanes I might best continue life in my languishing hopes, there comes one

³⁰⁹ It should be noted that Lescarbot, also speaks of the death of Bessabes in battle, and says that his successor was Asticou, a chief whom we hear of later at Mount Desert in connection with the mission of Fathers Biard and Masse. The word *Asticou*, we are told by Champlain signifies *boiler*. The Indians delighted

in names which suggested some apparent characteristic, or commemorated some personal achievement or event; hence it is probable that this chief was named, in accordance with the custom of his people, after some prominent trait of character which he possessed.

20 *A Description of New-England.*

one Captain *Henry Harley*³¹⁰ unto me, bringing with him a Native of the Island of *Capawick*,³¹¹ a place seated to the Southward of *Cape Codd* whose name was *Epenewe* a person of a goodly stature, strong and well proportioned, this man was taken upon the main with some twenty nine others by a ship of *London* that endeavoured to sell them for slaves in *Spaine*, but being understood that they were *Americans*, and found to be unapt for their uses, they would not meddle with them, this being one of them they refused, wherein they exprest more worth then those that brought them to the market, who could not but know that our Nation was at that time in travaile for settling of Christian Colonies upon that continent, it being an act much tending to our prejudice, when we came into that part of the Countries, as it shall further appeare; how Captaine *Harley* came to be possessed of this *Savage*, I know not, but I understood by others how he had been shewed in *London* for a wonder,³¹² it is true (as I have said) he was a goodly man of a brave aspect,

³¹⁰ This man, Gorges says further on in the *Narration*, was one of the Pop-ham Colony; and as Captain Edward Harlow happened to be prominent in that Colony, it has been inferred by writers hitherto that Gorges made a mistake in the name of the man who brought Epenow to him, and that he should have written, instead of "Henry Harley," "Edward Harlow." But Gorges would hardly have made such an error, since Captain Henry Haley, Harley, or Hawley must have been well known to him at the time this *Narration* was written, as he had been for some years Governor of Barbadoes, and had been at loggerheads with the Earl of Carlisle, one of Gorges' friends and associates. We may therefore be certain

that Henry Harley was one of the Pop-ham Colony as well as Edward Harlow.

³¹¹ Now known as Martha's Vineyard.

³¹² If we may credit Shakespeare, Indians were considered an interesting spectacle in London in his time. Thus in *The Tempest* (Act II. Sc. 2), first acted before Prince Charles, the Lady Elizabeth, and the Prince Palatine in 1613, Trinculo says:

"Were I in England now (as once I was), and had but this fish painted, not a holiday fool there but would give a piece of silver: there would this monster make a man; any strange beast there makes a man! When they will not give a doit to relieve a lame beggar, they will lay out ten to see a dead Indian."

aspect, stout and sober in his demeanor, and had learned so much *English* as to bid those that wondered at him, welcome, welcome, this being the last and best use they could make of him, that was now grown out of the peoples wonder, the Captain, falling further into his familiarity, found him to be of acquaintance and friendship with those subject to the *Bashaba*, whom the Captain well knew, being himselfe [14] one of the Plantation, sent over by the Lord chiefe justice, and by that means understood much of his language, found out the place of his birth, nature of the Country, their severall kinds of commodities, and the like, by which he conceived great hope that good might be made of him, if meanes could be found for his imployment, but finding adventurers of that kind were worne out of date; after so many saylings, and so soone upon the return of our late Colony, but the Gentleman calling to mind my aptnesse to designs of that nature, lays up his rest to discover his greatest secrets to me, by whom had hoped to rise or fall in this action, after he had spoken with me, and that I had seen his *Savage*, though I had some reason to beleive the Gentleman in what he told me, yet I thought it not amisse to take some time before I undertook a businesse (as I thought) so improbable in some particulars, but yet I doubted not, my resolution being such (as is said) I might make some use of his service; And therefore wisht him to leave him with me, giving him my word, that when I saw my time to send againe to those parts, he should have notice of it, and I would be glad to accept of his service, and that with as great kindnesse as he freely offered it, in the meane time, he might be pleased to take his owne course.

CHAPTER XII.

The reasons of my undertaking the imployment for the Island of Capawick.

AT the time this new *Savage* came unto me, I had recovered *Affacumet*, one of the Natives I sent with Captain *Chalownes* in his unhappy imployment, with whom I lodged *Epenaw*, who at the first hardly understood one [15] the others speech, till after a while; I perceived the difference was no more then that, as ours is betweene the Northern and Southerne people, so that I was a little eased in the use I made of my old servant whom I ingaged to give account of what he learned by conference between themselves, and he as faithfully performed it; Being fully satisfied of what he was able to say, and the time of making ready, drawing on, following my pretended designs; I thought it became me to acquaint the thrice honoured Lord of *South-Hampton*³¹³ with it, for that I knew the Captain had

³¹³ Henry Wriothesley, the third Earl of Southampton, was a man of literary tastes, and was reckoned among the friends and admirers of Shakespeare. He largely contributed to the expedition of Gosnold in 1602, and from that time until his death strove to promote the colonization of America. After the failure of the Popham Colony, his attention was turned to Virginia, and in 1620 he accepted the office of Treasurer of the Virginia Company of London. A curious letter, bearing date December 15th, 1609, written by him to Secretary Cecil, is preserved in the office of the Public Records, which reveals, as so

many letters of the time reveal, the childishness of James. In this letter Southampton speaks of a conversation with James relative to Virginia, in which reference had been made to some flying squirrels, which had been recently brought to England; and he tells Cecil, that the King very earnestly desired to know if none had been reserved for him, and declared that he knew that the powerful minister would get one for him. Finding the King's heart set upon the matter, Southampton hastened to write this letter, telling the care-burdened Cecil that he would not trouble him in such a matter, if Cecil himself did

had some relation to his Lordship, and I not willing in those daies, to undertake any matter extraordinary without his Lordships advice, who approved of it so well that he adventured 100*l.* in that imployment, and his Lordship being at that time Commander of the Isle of *Wight*, where the Captain had his abiding under his Lordship, who out of his noblenesse was pleased to furnish me with some land Soldiers, and to commend to me a grave Gentleman, one Captain *Hobson*, who was willing to go that voyage, and to adventure 100*l.* himselfe. To him I gave the command of the Ship, all things being ready, and the company came together, attending but for a faire winde; they set saile in *June*, in *Anno* 1614. being fully instructed how to demean themselves in every kind, carrying with them *Epenow*, *Assacomet*, and *Wanape*, another Native of those parts sent me out of the Isle of *Wight* for my better information in the parts of the Country of his knowledge, when as it pleased God that they were arrived upon the coast they were Pilotted from place to place, by the Natives themselves, as well as their hearts could desire; And comming to the Harbour
where

not know how the King was "affected by such toys." After the dissolution of the Virginia Company, Southampton, accompanied by one of his sons, went to the Netherlands, where he took command of an English regiment. While stationed near Bergen-op-Zoom, in the autumn of 1624, a fatal disease broke out in the English camp, to which many of the troops fell victims, and among them the Earl and his eldest son, whose bodies were transported to England, and amid great sorrow buried at Litchfield, in the county of Southampton, the country-seat of the Earl. Although the

title became extinct in his second son in 1667, the memory of "the thrice-honored" Earl is perpetuated in a noble charity founded by him in Litchfield, not long before his death, for the education of girls, twelve being the number now maintained in the establishment. Nothing but the ruins of Palace House, his former favorite residence, now remain. This house was built by him on the site and from the ruins of an ancient abbey founded in 1231. It was in this house that Charles I. was concealed after his escape from Hampton Court in 1647.

where *Epenow* was to make good his undertaking,³¹⁴ the principall inhabitants of the place came aboard, some of them being his Brothers, others his near Couzens, who after they had communed together and were kindly entertained by the Captain, departed in their Cannowes, promising the next morning to come aboard again, and bring some trade with them: But *Epenow* privately (as it appeared) had [16] contracted with his friends, how he might make his escape without performing what he had undertaken, being in truth no more then he had told me he was to do though with losse of his life, for otherwise if it were found that he had discovered the secrets of his Country, he was sure to have his braines knockt out as soone as he came a shoar, for that cause I gave the Captaine strict charge to endeavour by all meanes to prevent his escapeing from them, and for the more surety, I gave order to have three Gentlemen of my owne kinred to be ever at hand with him, cloathing him with long garments, fitly to be laid hold on, if occasion should require; Notwithstanding all this, his friends being all come at the time appointed with twenty Cannows, and lying at a certaine distance with their Bows ready, the Captaine calles to them to come aboard, but they not moving, he speakes to *Epenow* to come unto him, where he was in the fore castle of the Ship, he being then in the wast of the Ship between two of the Gentlemen that had him in gard, start, suddainly from them, and comming to the Captaine, calls to his friends in *English* to come aboard, in the interim slips himselfe over board, and although he were taken hold of

³¹⁴ Which was to conduct the adventurers to a gold mine.

of by one of the company, yet being a strong and heavy Man, could not be stayed, and was no sooner in the water, but the Natives sent such a shovre of arrowes, and came withall desperately so neer the Ship, that they carryed him away in despight of all the Musquetteers aboard, who were for the number as good as our nation did afford; And thus were my hopes of that particular made void and frustrate, and they returned without doing more, though otherwise ordered how to have spent that summer to good purpose; but such are the fruits to be looked for, by employing men Men more zealous of gain than frought with experience how to make it.

[17]

CHAPTER XIII.

Sir Richard Hakings undertook by authority from the Council of the second Colonie to trie what service he could do them as President for that yeare.

HAVING received his Commission and Instructions, he departed in *October* 1615, and spent the time of his being in those parts in searching of the Country, and finding out the commodities thereof, but the war was at the height and the principall Natives almost destroyed,³¹⁵ so that his
observation

³¹⁵ A frenzy of destruction had at this time seized upon the savage tribes from the seaboard to the great lakes. In the Northwest the Ottawas and Hurons, aided by Champlain, were fiercely contending with the ferocious Iroquois; while along the Atlantic seaboard the New England tribes were engaged in an equally deadly conflict. This de-

vastating war and the plague which followed have ever been regarded as means employed by Providence in preparing the way for Christian colonization. Even King James embodied this belief in the Grand Plymouth Patent, so called, in the following words, that he had "been given certainly to knowe, that within these late Yeares, there

26 *A Description of New-England.*

obfervation could not be fuch as could give account of any new matter, more than formerly had been received, from thence he paff along the coaft to *Virginia*, & ftay'd there fome time, in expectation of what he could not be fatisfied in, fo took his next courfe for *Spain*, to make the beft of fuch commodities he had got together, as he coafted from place to place having fent his Ship laden with Fifh to the Market before, and this was all that was done by any of us that yeare.

CHAPTER XIV.

Of the fending of Captaine Rocraft to meete with Captaine Dermor in NEW-ENGLAND.

ABOUT this time I received letters from Captaine *Dermor* out of *New-England*, giving me to underftand that there was one of my Savages fent into thofe parts [18] brought from *Malago* in a Ship of *Bristol*, acquainting me with the meanes I might recover him, which I followed and had him fent me, who was after employed with others in the voyage with Captaine *Hobfon* fent to *Capawike* as

there hath by God's Vifitation, raigned a wonderfull Plague, together with many horrible Slaughters and Murthers, committed amongst the Sauages and brutifh People there, heertofofe inhabiting, in a Manner to the utter Deftruftion, Devaftacion and Depopulacion of that whole Territorie, fo that there is not left for many Leagues together in a Manner, any that doe claime or challenge, any Kind of Interests therein, — whereby We in our Judgment are per-

fuaded and fatisfied that the appointed Time is come in which Almighty God in his great Goodnefs and Bountie towards Us and our People hath thought fitt and determined, that thofe large and goodly Territoryes, deferted as it were by their naturall Inhabitants, fhould be poffeffed and enjoyed by fuch of our Subjects and People as heertofofe have and hereafter fhall by his Mercie and Favour, and by his Powerfull Arme, be directed and conducted thither."

as is aboveſaid,³¹⁶ by this Savage Captaine *Dermor* underſtood ſo much of the ſtate of his Country, as drew his affections wholly to follow his hopes that way, to which purpoſe he writes, that if I pleaſed to ſend a Commiſſion to meete him in *New-England*, he would endeavour to come from the *New-found Land* to receive it, and to obſerve ſuch other inſtructions as I pleaſed to give him, whereupon the next ſeaſon I ſent Captaine *Rocraft* with a company I had of purpoſe hired for the ſervice. At his arrivall upon the coaſt he met with a ſmall Barque of *Deepe*, which he ſeized upon according to ſuch liberties as was granted unto him in ſuch caſes, notwithstanding, the poore *French-Man* being of our Religion, I was eaſily perſwaded upon his petition to give content for his loſſe, although it proved much to damage afterwards, for Captaine *Rocraft* being now ſhipped and furniſhed with all things neceſſary, left the Coaſt contrary to my directions, and went to *Virginia*, where he had formerly dwelt, and there falling into company with ſome of his old acquaintance, a quarrell happened between him and another, ſo that before he could get away he was ſlaine, by which accident the Barque was left at random, (the moſt part of the company being on ſhoar) a ſtorme ariſing, ſhe was caſt away, and all her proviſions loſt, ſomething was ſaved but nothing ever came to my hands.

CHAP. XV.

³¹⁶ This was Tiſquantum, whom Gorges confounds with Aſſacomet, one of the natives ſent with Challons, whom he had alſo recovered from captivity and ſent to the coaſt of New England with Hobſon five years before this date.

Of my imployment of Captain Dormer after his saylings to come from the New-found land to New-England.

Captain *Dormer* being disappointed of his meanes to come from *New-found-land*, to *New-England*, took shipping for *England*; and came to me at *Plymouth* where I gave him an account of what I had done, and he me, what his hopes were, to be able to do me service (if I pleased) to imploy him, hereupon I conferred his informations, together with mine owne I received by severall wayes, and found them to agree in Many the particulars of highest consequence and best considerations, whereupon I dispatched him away with the company he had gotten together, as fast as my owne Ship could be made ready for her ordinary imployment, sending with him what he thought necessary, hoping to have met Captaine *Rocraft*, where he was assigned to attend till he received further directions from me, but at the Ships arrivall they found Captain *Rocraft* gone for *Virginia*, with all his company in the Barque he had taken, of which before Captaine *Dormer* arriving, and seeing *Rocraft* gon, was much perplexed, yet so resolved he was, that he ceased not to follow his designe with the Men and Meanes which I had sent him, and so shaped his course from *Sagadahock* in 44 degrees to *Capawike* being in 41 and 36 minutes, sending me a journall of his proceeding, with the description of the Coast all along as he pas'd. Passing by *Capawike*, he continued his course along the coast

coast from Harbour to Harbour till he came to *Virginia*, where he expected to meete with *Rocraft* (as afore) but finding him dead,³¹⁷ and all lost that should have sup-
[20] ply'd him, he was forced to shift as he could to make his returne, and comming to *Capawike* and *Nautican*,³¹⁸ and going first to *Nautican* and from thence to *Capawike*, he fet himselfe and some of his people on shoar, where he met with *Epenow* the *Savage*, who had escaped (of whom) before,: This *Savage* speaking some *English*, laughed at his owne escape, and reported the story of it, Mr. *Dormer* tould him he came from mee, and was one of my servants, and that I was much grieved he had beene so ill used, as to be forced to steale away; this *Savage* was so cunning, that after he had questioned him about me and all he knew belonged unto me, conceived he was come on purpose to betray him, and conspired with some of his fellowes to take the Captaine, thereupon they laid hands upon him, but he being a brave stoute Gentleman, drew his Sword and freed himselfe, but not without fourteen wounds, this disaster forced him to make all possible hast to *Virginia* to be cured of his wounds; at the second returne he had the misfortune to fall sick and die of the infirmity many of our Nation are subject unto at their first comming into those parts; the losse of this Man,

I

³¹⁷ Edward Rowcroft, otherwise Edward Stallenge, had, before his employment by Sir Ferdinando Gorges, been an adventurer to Virginia, as a letter of his to the Earl of Salisbury in the Public Records Office shows, which explains an entry in the Records of the Virginia Company of London, some time after his death, in which he is

spoken of as an old Planter. He was slain in a quarrel by William Epps, who in 1630 was one of the Council of Sir Thomas Warner, Governor of St. Christopher's.

³¹⁸ This is the Island of Nantucket, which appears in ancient documents, also, as Nantukes, Mantukes, and Nantucquet.

30 *A Description of New-England.*

I confesse, much troubled me, and had almost made me resolve never to intermeddle in any of those courses.³¹⁹

CHAPTER XVI.

The reasons of endeavouring to renew our first Patent and to establish the forme of Government by way of Corporation at PLYMOUTH.

AFTER I had made so many trialls of the State and Commodities of the Country, and Nature and Condition [21] of the People, and found all things agreeable to the ends I aymed at from the first, I thought it sorted with Reason and Justice to use the like diligence, order, and care for our affaires in the Northern Plantation, the Company of *Virginia* for the Southern, with some alteration of the forme of Government, as more proper (in our judgement) for affaires of that kinde, and like enlargement of the borders, beginning where they ended at 40 degrees and from thence to 48 Northwards, and into the land from Sea to Sea; of this my resolution I was bould to offer the founder considerations to divers of his Majesties honourable Privy Councell, who had so good liking thereunto, as they willingly became interested themselves therein as Patentees, and Councellours for the managing of the businesse, by whose favours I had the easier passage in the obtaining his
Majesties

³¹⁹ Dermer, in a letter to the Rev. Samuel Purchas, written from the plantation of Captain John Martin, the brother-in-law of Sir Julius Cæsar, has left on record an interesting account of this voyage. It may be found in full, *antea*, note 276.

Majesties Royall Charter to be granted us according to his warrant to the then Solicitor Generall, the true Copy whereof followeth (*viz.*) To Sir *Thomas Coventry*³²⁰ Knight, his Majesties Solicitor Generall.

W*Her*cas it is thought fit that a Patent of Incorporation be granted to the Adventurers of the Northern Colonie in Virginia, to containe the like Liberties, Priviledges, Power, Authorities, Lands and all other things within their limits, (*viz.*) between the degrees of 40 and 48, as were heretofore granted to the company in Virginia, excepting onely that whereas the said company have a Freedom of Custome & Subsidie for 21 yeares, and of Impositions for ever, this new Company is to be free of Custome and Subsidie for the like terme of yeares, and of Impositions after so long time as his Majesty shall please to grant unto them, this shall be therefore to will and require you to prepare a Patent ready for his Majesties Royall Signature to the purpose aforesaid, leaving a blank for the time of freedome from imposition to be supplied, and put in by his Majesty, for which this shall be your warrant, dated 23 July 1620

Signed by the	{	L. Chancellour. ³²¹	{	Lord Digby. ³²⁶
		L. Privy Seale. ³²²		Mr. Comptroller. ³²⁷
		Earl of Arundell. ³²³		Mr. Secretary Naunton. ³²⁸
		Mr. Secretary Calvert. ³²⁴		Mr. of the Wards. ³²⁹
		Mr. of the Rolls. ³²⁵		

CHAP. XVII.

³²⁰ Thomas Coventry was born at Croome Dabitot, in Worcestershire, in 1578, and was educated at Baliol College. After studying law he became Recorder of London, November 17th, 1615; Solicitor-General on the 14th of the following March, and two days later was knighted by James at Theobalds. He had been a familiar friend of Coke, and the King for a while looked coldly upon him, but receiving assurances that he had no disposition to cavil at the prerogative, he was advanced to the office of Attorney-General in 1621, and in

1625 to that of Lord Keeper of the Great Seal. He was still further rewarded in 1628, by being elevated to the peerage as Baron Coventry. He was reputed to be a good lawyer and judicious politician; never in any way opposing the doctrines which for the moment were popular at court. He died on January 14th, 1639.

³²¹ Sir Fulke Greville, the friend of Sydney and Shakespeare, was eminent during the reigns of Elizabeth and James, both as a literary man and as a statesman. He was created Baron Brooke in 1620.

Shewing the troubles I underwent by the reason of the Company of Virginia's exceptions, taken at the Patent granted by the Lords and others for the affaires of NEW-ENGLAND.

I have briefly given you an accompt of the failings and difasters of what hath past in those my former and forreigne undertakings, I will now (with your patience) let you see some of my troubles I met with where I might have hoped

1620. The manner of his death which took place September 30th, 1628, at what time he was Chancellor of the Exchequer, is singular. He had executed his will, and was reading to an old and confidential fervitor the legacies bequeathed to his servants. When the fellow heard Greville read the amount bequeathed to him, he became angry at what he considered the smallness of the amount, and in a fit of passion stabbed his master and then committed suicide to escape the punishment due for his crime. The following epitaph may still be read on Greville's tomb in the old church at Warwick:

FULKE GREVILLE,
SERVANT TO QUEEN ELIZABETH,
COUNSELLOR TO KING JAMES,
AND FRIEND TO SIR PHILIP SYDNEY.
TROPHÆUM PECCATI.

⁸²² Edward Somersfet, Earl of Worcester, was one of the most accomplished men of the Courts of Elizabeth and James. He was especially distinguished for his skill in tilting and other manly exercises, in which he was rarely surpassed. He was made Lord Privy Seal by King James in 1616. His death took place on March 3d, 1627.

⁸²³ Thomas Howard, Earl of Arundel and Surrey, was Earl Marshall and Lord High Steward of England. He possessed a remarkable taste for painting and architecture, and was passionately fond of antique sculpture, of which he acquired a rare and valuable collection. He died in Italy, September 14th, 1646.

⁸²⁴ Sir George Calvert, Secretary of Sir Robert Cecil and clerk of the Privy Council, was knighted in 1617. Although he renounced the reformed faith in 1624, and became a Roman Catholic, James I. made him Baron Baltimore. He was interested in colonization, and expended a fortune in endeavoring to settle the Province of Avalon in Newfoundland; but failing in this enterprise, he obtained an extensive grant in North America, now known as Maryland. Before his patent had passed the seals, Sir George Calvert died, and the patent passed to his eldest son Cecil.

⁸²⁵ Sir Julius Cæsar was the son of Cæsar Adelmarr, an Italian physician of note in the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth. He was born in England in 1557, and was educated for the law. By character and ability he soon attained wealth and influence. He was knighted by King

hoped for a comfortable encouragement, but such is (we commonly see) the condition of humane Nature that what is well intended and confidently pursued by a publique spirit, is notwithstanding sometimes by others made subject to exceptions and so prosecuted as a matter worthy of reprehension, so fared it with me at this present, for I had no sooner past the Patent under the great Seale, but certaine of the company

King James and became Chancellor of the Exchequer, a member of the Privy Council, and Master of the Rolls, which latter office he held at the time of his death, April 28th, 1636; Granger says, 1639.

⁸²⁶ Sir Kenhelm Digby. He was appointed Commander of the Mediterranean Squadron in 1628, and by his success in suppressing the Algerine pirates, who had been the terror of British merchants, achieved great renown. He was a man of considerable learning, but a bold theorist, which won for him the title of the "Pliny of his age for lying." He was the author of several books. He died June 11th, 1665.

⁸²⁷ Henry Carey was the son of William Carey and Mary, sister of Anne Boleyn. He was therefore a cousin of Queen Elizabeth, who created him Baron Hunsdon. King James made him Comptroller of the Household, and further advanced him in 1621, by conferring upon him the title of Viscount Falkland. In 1622 he was appointed Lord Deputy of Ireland, which position he occupied for seven years. He possessed some literary talent, and left to posterity a Life of King Edward the Second. He died in 1633.

⁸²⁸ Sir Robert Naunton was a favorite of Buckingham, and was made Secretary of State in 1617. He was subsequently made Master of the Wards. He was the author of *Fragmenta Regalia*, which comprises interesting sketches of Elizabethan men of note,

which was not published until after his death, which took place in 1630.

⁸²⁹ Sir Lionel Cranfield, made Master of the Court of Wards, January 15th, 1619. His career is indeed remarkable, when we consider how difficult it was for a man in his day to rise from a low estate to rank and fortune. He began life like Whittington, as a London apprentice, and by his wit and good looks won the affection of his master's pretty daughter, with a marriage portion of eight hundred pounds. With this small sum he went into trade, and soon became wealthy, and at the same time attracted public attention by his ability as a financier. Being interested in a purchase of a large quantity of land, and hearing that Lord Northampton greatly desired a small portion adjoining land which that nobleman owned, he advised his associates, as a profitable venture, to make a present to Northampton of the coveted land. This was done; and the powerful Lord introduced the ambitious plebeian to King James, who at once knighted him and appointed him Surveyor-General of the Customs. His rise was rapid. He was made a Peer in July, 1621; in the following September Lord Treasurer, and a year later received the lofty title of Earl of Middlesex. Owing to charges of corruption, he was degraded from the office of Lord Treasurer by King Charles in 1625; although he was soon pardoned, he never regained his former influence.

company of *Virginia* tooke exceptions thereat, as conceiving it tended much to their prejudice in that they were debarred the intermeddling within our limits who had formerly excluded us, from having to do with theirs, hereupon severall complaints were made to the King and Lords of the Privy Councell, who after many deliberate hearings, and large debate on both sides, saw no cause wherefore we should not enjoy what the King had granted us, as well as they what the King had granted them, especially having obtained from him so many gracious favours over and above our aymes, as namely severall free gifts, divers great salaries, and other great advantages to the value (as I have understood) of five or six

hundred thousand pound whereas our ambition onely [23] aymed at the enjoying of his Majesties favour and Justice to protect and support us in our freedoms, that we might peaceably reape the benefits of *GOD*'s gracious gifts, raised by our owne Industries, without any of their helpe or hinderances, our desires being so faire that all that were not over partiall, easily assented thereunto, and ordered it accordingly, as by the same it may appeare, but that could not satisfie, for I was plainly tould, that howsoever I had sped before the Lords, I should heare more of it the next Parliament, assuring me that they would have 300 voices more than I, whereupon I replied, If justice could be overthrown by voices, it should not grieve me to loose what I had so honestly gotten; the next Parliament was no sooner assembled, but I found it too true wherewith I was formerly threatned, as you may see it following.³³⁰

CHAP. XVIII.

³³⁰ The Virginia Company's side of this controversy is presented in their records as follows:

Gorges objects to fishing in North Colony.
Dec. 1, 1619. The last great generall Courte being read Mr Thr'er acquainted them

CHAPTER XVIII.

My being Summoned to appeare in the House of Parliament to answer what was to be objected against the Patent of NEW-ENGLAND.

THE whole house being dissolved into a Committee, Sir *Edward Cook*,³³¹ being in the chaire, I was called for to the Barre, where after some space it pleased him to tell me that

them that Mr. John Delbridge purposing to fettle a pticuler Colony in Virginia defyring of the Company that for defrayinge somewhat of his charges, that hee might bee admitted to fish at Cape Codd wch request was opposed by S^r Ferdinando Gorge alleging that hee alwaies fauored Mr. Delbridge, but in this hee thought himselfe something touched that he should sue to this Company and not rather to him as properlie belonging to the North Colony to giue libertie for the fishing in that place, it being within their latitude which was answered by Mr. Thr^r that the Comp^y of the So and North Plantation are the one free of the other. And that the L^r'es patent is that each may fish within the other the Sea being free of both, w^{ch} if the No Colony abridge them of this, they would take away their means and encouragements of fending of men.

Unto which S^r Ferdinando Georges replied that if hee mistake not himselfe both the Companies were lymitted by y^e Patent unto w^{ch} hee would submitt himselfe, for the decyding whereof it is referred unto the Counsell who are of both Companies to examine the L^r'es Patents to morrow afternoone att my Lord of Southamptons and accordingly to determine the dispute.

And again, March 18th : —

"Concerning the difference of fishing betwene the South and No Collony itt pleased Mr. Thr^r to signifie that although hee was very unwilling by reason of the

multitude of other buisnesses yett hee and the Committee had intended the Lo. Duke, and the Lo: of Arundle and there was for the other side S^r Ferd: Gorge and others where disputing the matter before their Lo^{ps} they pleased neither to allow nor disallowe entirely the one parte or the other, but sett doone & order as seemed fittest to their Lo^{ps} for the obteyning a copy whereof they now appoynted the Secretary to repare to S^r Clement Edmonds and desire itt of him in the name of the Comp^y & appoynted him to give his clarke a fee."

Under date of July 7th, 1620, appears the following entry:—

"Sir John Dauers and S^r Thomas Roe are appoynted Committees to drawe a generall y^e to his Ma^{tie} to preferue the fishing at Cape Codd free and indifferent to both the Collonies as was intended in the first Patent and being drawne to present the same at the next Courte uppon Wednesday."

The final entry (November 4th, 1620) in the Company's records relative to this matter is as follows:—

"Wheruppon S^r Edwin Sandys did intimate unto the Courte y^t hee was informed that S^r Ferdinando Gorges had p^cured unto himselfe and others a new Patent (now passed his Ma^{ty} great seale) wherein certain words were conveyed that did not only contradict a former order of the Lds of the Counsell, which their Lps, after a full hearing

36 *A Description of New-England.*

that the House understood that there was a Patent granted to me, and diverse other noble persons therein nominated for the establishing of a Colony in *New England*, this (as it seemes) was a grievance of the *Common-wealth*, and so complained of in respect of many particulars therein contained contrary to the Lawes and priviledges of the subjects, as
also

inge of the allegacons on both sides, and sett down in June last by w^{ch} this company had yielded some of their right to doe them good, and thereby promised to fish onely for their necessities and transportation of people; . . . butt, by this new graunt, the Adventurers of the Northern Collony had also utterlie excluded those of the sotherne from fishing att all upon the coaste, without their leaue and lycense first sought and obtained, which was contrary and manifestly repugnant to that communitie and freedome w^{ch} his Ma^y by the first Pattent, as is conceived, hath been pleased to graunt unto either Collony.

The Courte, therefore, feeing no reason why they should loose their former right graunted unto them by the first Pattent, the Sea also beinge to all as free and comon as the Ayre, and fyndinge less reason why S^r Ferdinando Gorges should now appropriate and make a monopolie of y^e fishing, which hath allreadie cost this company 6.000^{li}: and was the only means left (now the Lotteries were almost spent and other supply began to faile) to enable them to transport their people and susteyne their plantacon withall: did wth a generall consent, resolve forthwith to petition to his Ma^{tie} for a redresse herein, and to pray a further declaracon of his gracious pleasure and intention concerninge that clause of prohibition and restraunte inserted in the New Pattent, whereby they were defeated of their libertie of fishing. Whereuppon they appointed these committees to drawe the said petition, and to make itt, in substance, agreeable to those three poynts Sir Edwin Sandys had deliuered in open Courte. And for that Sir Thomas Roe said that hee was the next day to goe to the court, they desired him to p^rsent the same to his Ma^y.

Vide History of the Virginia Com-

pany of London, by Edward D. Neill, Albany, 1869, pp. 165, 175, 192, 195 *et seq.*

³³¹ Sir Edward Coke. Sir Ferdinando Gorges spells the name as it was then frequently spelt. Lord Campbell remarks that it is amusing to observe the efforts made to disguise names derived from trades, and that in this case, as the name did not correspond with the notion of the Cokes having come over with the Conqueror, attempts had been made to derive the family name from Cock or Coke, a chief; but that, like Butler, Taylor, and similar names, it more probably took its origin from the occupation of the founder of the family. Coke's second wife, Lady Hatton, who would not assume her husband's name, adopted this spelling, and was in the habit of addressing him sarcastically as Mr. Cook. Sir Edward was born on the first of February, 1551, and died September 3d, 1634, after a remarkable career in which he gained the honor of being considered by his contemporaries the greatest oracle of English municipal jurisprudence. He exhibited a coarseness and brutality in the trial of Sir Walter Raleigh which remarkably portrays his true character. He addressed the unfortunate nobleman as "Thou viper. thou traitor;" insulted his witnesses, and feeling that conviction was at hand shouted vehemently, "Now Jesus Christ shall be glorified!" An interesting sketch of this celebrated lawyer may be found in *Lives of the Chief Justices of England*, by Lord Campbell, New York, 1874, Vol. I. pp. 245-357.

also that it was a Monopoly, and the colour of planting a Colony put upon it for particular ends, and private gaine, which the House was to looke unto and to Minister justice to all parties, assuring me further that I should receive nothing but justice, and that the House would do no wrong to any, that I was a Gentleman of Honour and worth, but the Publique was to be respected before all particulars, but before they could descend to other matters in the businesse, the Patent was to be brought into the House, therefore he required the delivery of it.

To this generall Charge and speciall Command I humbly replied, that for my owne part, I was but a particular person, and inferior to many, to whom the Patent was granted, having no power to deliver it, without their assents, neither in truth was it in my custody, but being demanded who had it, I answered that it remained still (for ought I knew) in the Crowne office, where it was left since the last Parliament, for that it was resolved to be renewed for the amendment of some faults contained therein, from whence if it pleased the House, they might command it, and dispose thereof as their wisdomes thought it good. But to the generall Charge I know not (under favour) how any action of that kind could be a grievance to the publique, seeing at first it was undertaken for the advancement of Religion, the enlargement of the bounds of our Nation, the increase of trade, and the jmployment of many thousands of all sorts of people.

That I conceived it could not be esteemed a Monopoly, though it is true at the first discovery of the coast few were interested in the charge thereof, for many could not be
drawn

drawn to adventure in actions of that kind where they were assured of losse, and small hopes of gain.

And indeed so many adventures had been made, and so many losses sustained and received, that all or the most part that tasted thereof grew weary, till now it is found [25] by our constant perseverance therein, that some profit by a course of fishing, upon that coast, may be made extraordinary, which was never intended to be converted to private uses by any grant obtained by us from his Majesty, as by the severall offers made to all the Maritime Cities and Townes in the Westerne parts, that pleased to partake of the Liberties, and Immunities granted to us by his Majesty, which was desired principally for our warrant to regulate those affaires, the better to settle the publique Plantation by the profits to be raised by such as sought the benefit thereof, (being no more in effect) then many private Gentlemen, and Lords of manners within our owne Countries enjoyed at this present, and that both agreeable to the laws and justice of our Nation without offence to the subjects Liberties; but for my particular, I was glad of the present occasion that had so happily called them together from all parts of the Kingdome, to whom I was humbly bold in the behalfe of my selfe and the rest of those intrusted in the Pattent to make present proffer thereof to the House for the Generall estate of the whole kingdome, so they would prosecute the settling the Plantation, as from the first was intended, wherein we would be their humble servants in all that lay in our power, without looking back to the great charge that had been expended in the discovery, and seizure of the coast, and bringing it to the passe it was come unto. That what was more to be said
to

to the Patent for the present, I humbly prayed I might receive in particular, to the end I might be the better furnished to give them answer thereunto by my Councill, at such time they pleased to heare me againe, being confident, I should not onely have their approbation in the further prosecuting so well grounded a designe, but their furtherance also, howsoever I was willing to submit the whole to their honourable censures, hereupon it was ordered, that the Patent should be looked into by a Committee assigned for that [26] purpose, and the exceptions taken against it delivered to me, that had a prefixed day to attend them againe with my Councill at Law to answer to those their objections.

CHAPTER XIX.

My second appearance with my COUNCELL.

THE time assigned being come, and I not receiving their objections (as by the House it was ordered) I attended without my Councill, in that I wanted upon which to build my instructions for preparing them as in duty I ought, but being called I humbly told them, that in obedience to their commands, I attended to receive the Houses objections against the Patent of *New-England*, but it was not yet come to my hands, where the fault was I knew not, and therefore I besought them to assigne me a new day, and to order I might have it delivered to me as was intended, or otherwise if they so pleased, I was ready without my Councill to answer what could be objected, doubting, they might conceive, I fought
by

by delays to put off the businesse: to this it was answered by Sir *Edward Cooke*, that I had gained great favour of the House to receive the particulars in writing, by which I was able to plead my own cause (though as yet I had it not) but I acknowledged the greatnesse of their favours, and attended their further commands, according to the time assigned.

[27]

CHAPTER XX.

My appearance the third time, together with my Councell at Law.

HAVING received the Houses exceptions against the patent, I drew up my full answers to every particular, and entertained for my councell Mr. *Finch* of *Grayes Inne*³³² (since that the Lord *Finch*) and Mr. *Caltrup*,³³³ afterwards Attorney Generall of the Court of Wards; To these I delivered my instructions, assigning them to proceed accordingly, but, as in great Causes before great States, where the Court seemes to be a party, Councell oftentimes is shy of wading farther than

³³² John Finch, created Baron Finch in 1640. He succeeded Thomas Coventry as Lord Keeper, but was quite unlike his predecessor in character; being a truckler to those in power, and ever ready to prostitute his office to selfish ends. It is related that when speaker of the House of Commons, his speech to the throne so affected the King that he presented the effusive orator with a horse and trappings which cost a hundred pounds, together with a thousand pounds in money with which

to furnish his table. He died in exile in 1660.

³³³ He was of the Middle Temple, and succeeded Robert Mason as Queen's Solicitor. He became Sir Henry Calthrop, March 8th, 1635, having been knighted on that date by King Charles. He was also Attorney-General of the Court of Wards, and author of *Liber-ties, Usages, and Customs of the City of London*, which was published in 1642, and reprinted in *The Somers' Tracts*, Vol. V. pp. 520-536.

than with their safety they may returne; however, both did so well, the one for the matter of Justice, the other for the matter of Law, as in Common Judgement the Objections were fully answered, and they seeming to be at a stand; the House demanded of me what I had more to say my selfe, I being sensible wherein my Councell came short of my intentions, besought the House to take into their grave considerations, that the most part of the Fisher-Men spoken of, had in obedience to his Majesties Royall Grant, conformed themselves thereunto, and I hoped that they were but particular persons that opposed themselves against it, but admit all of them had joyned together, (yet had that belonged rather to the Councell for those affaires) to have complained of them for the many injuries and outrages done by them, that the Councell of their owne charge and cost, had first discovered that goodly coast, and found that hopefull meanes to settle a flourishing Plantation for the good of this Kingdom in generall, as well great Lords as Knights, Esquires, Gentlemen, Merchants, Fisher-Men, Trades-Men, Husband-Men, Labourers, and the like, and that both to honour and profit, [28] that the enlargement of the Kings Dominions, with the advancement of Religion in those desert parts, are matters of highest consequence, and far exceeding a simple and disorderly course of Fishing, which would soone be given over, for that so goodly a Coast could not be long left unpeopled by the *French*, *Spanish*, or *Dutch*, so that if the Plantation be destroyed, the Fishing is lost, and then the profit and honour of our Nation must perish (in all opinion) both to present and future ages, which these Men principally aymed at, that the mischief already sustained by those disorderly

VOL. II. — 6

Persons

Persons, are inhumane and intollerable; for first in their manners and behaviour they are worfe than the very Savages, impudently and openly lying with their Women, teaching their Men to drinke drunke, to sweare and blaspheme the Name of *GOD*, and in their drunken humour to fall together by the eares, thereby giving them occasion to seek revenge; besides, they couzen and abuse the Savages in trading and trafficking, selling them Salt covered with Butter in stead of so much Butter, and the like couzenages and deceipts, both to bring the Planters and all our Nation into contempt and disgrace, thereby to give the easier passage to those People that dealt more righteously with them; that they sell unto the Savages, Musquets, Fowling-Pieces, Powder, Shot, Swords, Arrow-Heads, and other Armes, where-with the Savages slew many of those Fisher-Men, and are growne so able, & so apt, as they become most dangerous to the Planters: and I concluded,

That in this particular I had beene drawne out of my zeale to my Countryes happinesse, to engage my estate so deeply as I had done, and having but two Sonnes, I adventured the life of one of them (who is there at this present) for the better advancement thereof, with others of his Kinsmen of his owne name with many other private friends) which so neerly concerned me, that if I did expresse more passion than ordinary in the delivery thereof, I hoped the House would be pleased to pardon me, affirming, that if I should do lesse, I might appeare willing to suffer them to perish by my
 [29] Negligence, Connivence, improvidence, or ungratefulnesse, to the dishonour of my Nation, and burden of my owne Conscience, but these things being considered, I presume

fume the Honourable affembly will do what in all respects shall be both juſt and lawfull, and that in confidence thereof, I wil ceaſe to be further troubleſome.³³⁴

CHAPTER XXI.

What followed upon my answer to the Houſes exceptions.

BEING perſwaded in my owne underſtanding, as well as in the judgement of thoſe that accompanied me I had ſufficiently ſatiſfied the moſt part of the Houſe, the rather for that they forbad the Lawyers to ſpeake any more, after I began to deliver what I had to ſay for my ſelfe, with this hope I departed attending the ſucceſſe, but underſtanding (from thoſe that were favourers and parties with me) that my oppoſites held their reſolutions to make it a Publique Grievance, and for ſuch, to preſent it to his Maſteſty. Hereupon I thought it became me to uſe my beſt meanes his Maſteſty might have ſight of their exceptions and my answers, which accordingly was performed; ſo that at the time the Houſes preſented the Publique Grievances of the Kingdome, that of the Patent of *New-England* was the firſt, wherein was declared, that having heard me and my Learned Councell ſeverall dayes, but that I could not defend the ſame, which the King obſerving was a little moved, finding the matter was made greater than the cauſe required; this their Publique

³³⁴ The reply of Sir Edward Coke to this argument was: "Shall none viſit the ſea-coaſt for fiſhing? This is to make a monopoly upon the ſeas, which were

wont to be free. If you alone are to pack and dry fiſh, you attempt a monopoly of the wind and fun."

lique Declaration of the Houses, dislike of the cause, shooke of all my adventurers for Plantation, and made many of the Patentees to quit their Interest, so that in all likely-
 [30] hood I must fall under the weight of so heavy a burthen, but the justnesse of my cause being truly apprehended by the King, from which I understood, he was not to be drawne to overthrow the Corporation he so much approved of in his owne judgement, and I was wished not to omit the prosecution thereof, as cause required, but I thought better to forbear for the present, in honour and respect of what had past in so publique a manner betweene the King and his House of Commons, who shortly after upon severall reasons, rising from particular persons, who (as it seemed) were more liberall in their language than became them, trenching farther upon the Kings Prerogative Power, he thought to be tolerated as doubting of the consequence thereof, whereupon the Parliament was dismissed, divers of those free speakers committed to the Tower, others to other Prisons,³³⁵ so that now I was called upon to attend those affaires on severall accidents that happened. As first, for that the *French* Embassadour made challenge to those Territories granted us by the King our Sovereigne, in the behalfe of the King of *France*, his Master, as belonging to his Subjects, that by his authority were possessed thereof as a
 part

³³⁵ The Parliament was dissolved by an insulting proclamation on the 6th of January, 1622; and Sir Edward Coke, Sir Robert Phillips, and other members were committed to the Tower and other prisons. James had been reported sick; but in his anger at the proceedings of Parliament, he rode up to London foam-

ing, it is said, at the mouth, and after proroguing Parliament, ordered the Clerk of the Commons to bring him the journals, from which he erased with his own hand, in the presence of the judges and his councillors, the objectionable proceedings of the would-be reformers.

part of *Nova France*, to which I was commanded by the King to give answer to the Embassadour his claime, which was sent me from the Lord Treasurer under the title of *Le Memoriall de Monsieur Seigneur Le Conte de Tillieres, Ambassadeur pour Le Royde France*,³³⁶ Whereunto I made so full a reply (as it seemes) there was no more heard of that their claime. But as Captaine *Dormer*, who (as I said) was coasting that Country, met with some Hollanders that were settled in a place we call *Hudson's River*,³³⁷ in trade with the Natives, who in the right of our Patent forbade them the place, as being by his Majesty appointed to us; there answer was, they understood no such thing, nor found any of our Nation there, so that they hoped they had not offended; However, this their communication removed them not, but upon our complaining of their intrusion to his Majesty, order was given to his Embassadors to deale with the States, to know by what warrant any of their Sub-
[31] jects tooke upon them to settle within those limits by him granted to his Subjects who were royally seized of a part thereof; to which was answered, that they knew of no such thing, if there were any, it was without their authority, and that they onely had enacted the company for the affaires

³³⁶ The Comte de Tillières belonged to a noble French family, and was noted for his diplomatic skill. He was especially charged with the business of settling the French claims in America, based upon the discoveries of Jacques Cartier, and the colonial establishment of Samuel de Champlain at Tadoussac. He arrived at London in September, 1623; but owing to the signal failure of his mission, he was recalled in the following

June, and returned home baffled and disappointed, and, we may believe, with no very kindly feelings toward Gorges, who was chiefly instrumental in his defeat.

³³⁷ The first European who is alleged to have visited this river was Verrazano, in 1524. The honor of its discovery has, however, been conceded to Henry Hudson, who explored it extensively in 1609. It has had many appellations, having

fares of the *West-Indies*; ³³⁸ this answer being returned, made us to prosecute our business, and to resolve of the removing of those Interlopers to force them to submit to the Government of those to whom that place belonged. Thus you may see how many burthens I travailed under of all sides, and yet not come near my journey's end.

CHAPTER XXII.

Of the Descent of Mr. Perce, ³³⁹ Mr. Day, others their Associates, within our limits being bound for Virginia.

BEFORE the unhappy controversy hapned between those of *Virginia*, and my selfe (as you have heard) they were forced through the great charge they had been at, to hearken to any propositions that might give ease and furtherance

having been known by the aboriginal inhabitants as the Shatemuc as well as the Cahohataba. Hudson named it the River of the Mountains; but this soon gave place to the River Mauritius, in honor of Prince Maurice, of Nassau. Near the close of the seventeenth century it was entitled the North River; but the name of the successful navigator Hudson, the name employed to designate it by Gorges, still clings to it.

³³⁸ This answer of the Dutch Government would seem evasive; but it was strictly true, as Dutch statesmen had not risen to a comprehension of the importance to their country of colonizing the New World. A considerable Dutch settlement had taken place at New Netherland, a name adopted in accordance with the prevalent custom which had given to the new settlements the

names of the countries from which the colonists had come, as New France, New Scotland, and New England. This Dutch settlement was simply a body of traders under the control of a corporation, known as the Dutch West India Company; hence it was in no condition to maintain itself against the encroachments of the English, who thoroughly comprehended the importance of continuous colonization under a well-ordered and stable government. Had Dutch statesmen equally comprehended this, the history of the Dutch in America would have been quite different from what it is to-day; for the Dutch people were in all respects the peers of the English, and able to compete with them in peaceful or warlike pursuits.

³³⁹ John Pierce was a citizen of London, by trade a cloth-maker. A patent had

therance to so hopefull a businesse; to that purpose, it was referred to their considerations how necessary it was, that means might be used to draw into those enterprises some of those families that had retired themselves into *Holland* for scruple of conscience, giving them such freedom and liberty, as might stand with their likings, this advice being hearkned unto, there were that undertook the putting it in practise, and accordingly brought it to effect so far forth, as that the three ships³⁴⁰ (such as their weake fortunes were able

had been taken out by the Pilgrims, as they are now familiarly denominated, on the 19th of June, 1619, which ran to John Wincob, a gentleman in the employ of the Countess of Lincoln. This was superseded by one to John Pierce and others on February 12th, 1620. This latter is the patent under which Pierce and Day made their "descent" within the limits of the Council for New England. These patents were both from the Southern Virginia Company. A third patent was granted to Pierce and his associates by the Council for New England, June 1st, 1621. This patent was for a long time lost, but is now to be seen at Pilgrim Hall in Plymouth, Massachusetts. The signatures of Lennox, Hamilton, Warwick, Sheffield, and Gorges are plainly legible. Pierce, on the 22d of April, 1622, obtained from the Council for New England a fourth patent, running to him, his heirs, associates and assigns. It has always been believed that by this act Pierce intended to defraud his associates of their title to the property in which they had been made jointly interested with himself by formal letters of association; but proof of this is insufficient. He seems to have quietly permitted his last patent to be cancelled by the Council. Of

Day, mentioned by Sir Ferdinando Gorges, nothing is known.

³⁴⁰ This is incorrect, as there were but two ships, the *Mayflower* and the *Speedwell*. There seems to be but little doubt that before sailing from Plymouth the treacherous captains had been persuaded to do what they could to prevent the Pilgrims from carrying out their design of landing in the vicinity of the Hudson River, and Sir Ferdinando Gorges has been suspected of having conspired with the infamous Jones, who commanded the *Mayflower*, to land them within the limits of his company's patent; but there is nothing to justify this suspicion; while evidence exists to indicate that the Dutch were at the bottom of such a conspiracy. There is a direct statement to this effect by Morton in his *Memorial* in the following words: "Some of the Dutch having notice of their intention, and having thoughts about the same time of erecting a plantation there likewise, they fraudulently hired the said Jones, by delays while they were in England, and now, under pretence of the shoals, to disappoint them in there going thither;" and he concludes by the positive assertion that "*of this plot between the Dutch and Mr. Jones, I have late and certain intelligence.*"

able to provide) whereof two proved unserviceable and so were left behind, the third with great difficulty recovered the coast of *New-England*, where they landed their people, many of them weake and feeble through the length of the Navigation, the leakinesse of the ship, and want of many other necessaries such undertakings required; but they were not many daies a shoar before they had gotten both health and strength, through the comfort of the Ayr, the store of fish and fowle, with plenty of wholsome rootes and hearbs the Country afforded; besides the civill respect the Natives used towards them, tending much to their happiness in so great extremity they were in, after they had well considered the state of their affaires and found that the Authority they had from the Company of *Virginia* could not warrant their abode in that place, which they found so prosperous and pleasing to them, they hastned away their ship, with order to their Sollicitor to deale with me, to be a meanes they might have a grant from the Councell of *New Englands* affaires to settle in the place, which was accordingly performed to their particular satisfaction and good content of them

intelligence." Several writers have, however, attempted to disprove this statement on the ground that neither Bradford nor Winslow mention such a plot, and that Morton wrote nearly fifty years after the landing of the Pilgrims. These writers have, however, lost sight of an important fact; namely, the source of Morton's information. Thomas Willett was a Plymouth man, and had lived at Leyden, where he became familiar with the Dutch language and people. Not long before Morton wrote, the English having subdued the Dutch at New York, Willett, an old friend of Morton,

on account of his knowledge of and popularity with the Dutch, was put in possession of the government, and the Dutch records and correspondence fell into his hands. What more natural than that Willett should communicate the interesting particulars of this plot, the evidence of which he found in the Dutch archives, to his old friend Morton, who was then Colonial Secretary, and in correspondence with him! Morton's record is the only original one, though it has been adopted by Mather, Hubbard, and other writers.

them all, which place was after called *New-Plymouth*, where they have continued ever since very peaceable, and in all plenty of all necessaries that nature needeth, if that could satisfie our vaine affections, where I will leave them for the present.³⁴¹

CHAPTER XXIII.

My Son Captain Robert Gorges sent by Authority of the Councill for those affaires, as their Lievtenant Generall.

THE severall complaints made to the Councell of the abuses committed by severall the Fishermen, and other [33] Interlopers, who without order from them frequented those coasts, tending to the scorne of our Nation, both to the ordinary mixing themselves with their women, and other beastly demeanors, tending to Drunkenesse to the overthrow of our trade and dishonour of the Government.

For reformation whereof, and to prevent the evils that may ensue, they were pleased to resolve of the sending some one into those parts, as their Lievtenant, to regulate the estate of their affaires and those abuses, hereupon my Son *Robert Gorges* being newly come out of the *Venetian War*, was the man they were pleased to pitch upon being one of the company

³⁴¹ This patent was dated June 1st, 1621, and was the first made by the Council for New England. Like that of January 13th, 1629, it was for several years missing, but is now in the office of the Registry of Deeds at Plymouth, Massachusetts. It does not bear the grand seal of the Council, like the later patent; but the private seals as well as the signatures of Lennox, Hamilton, Warwick, Gorges, appear upon it, and it once bore another now indecipherable. It may be found in the *Collections of the Massachusetts Historical Society*, Vol. IV. second series, p. 156.

pany, and interested in a proportion of the land with the rest of the Patentees, in the Bay of the *Majechewsett* containing ten miles in breadth, and thirty miles into the maine land, who between my Lord *Gorges* and my selfe, was speedily sent away into the said Bay of *Massechewset*, where he arrived about the beginning of *August* following, *Anno* 1623. that being the place he resolved to make his residence, as proper for the Publique, as well as for his private,³⁴² where landing his provisions, and building his storehouses, he sent to them of *New-Plymouth* (who by his Commission were authorised to be his assistants) to come unto him, who willingly obeyed his order, and as carefully discharged their duties; by whose experience he suddainely understood what was to be done with the poore meanes he had, beleiving the supplies he expected would follow, according to the undertakings of divers his familiar friends who had promised as much; but they hearing how I sped in the House of Parliament withdrew themselves, and my selfe and friends were wholly disabled to do any thing to purpose.

The report of these proceedings with us, comming to my Sons eares, he was advised to return home, till better occasion should offer it selfe unto him.

Here

³⁴² The word "interest" should be added to complete the sense.

[34] *Here followes my Son Captaine Gorges Patent.*

To all whom these presents shall come, the Councell for the Affaires of NEW-ENGLAND in AMERICA; send Greeting.

WHereas it hath pleased the Kings Most Excellent Majesty by his Royall Grant, bearing date the third day of *November*, in the eighteenth year of his Majesties Reigne over this his Highnesss Realme of *England, &c.* For divers causes therein expressed, absolutely to give, grant, and confirme unto us the said Councell and our Successours, all the foresaid Land of *New-England*, lying and being from fourty to fourty eight degrees of Northerly Latitude, and in length by all that breadth aforesaid, from Sea to Sea throughout the Main Land, together with all the Woods, Waters, Rivers, Soyles, Havens, Harbours, Islands, and other Commodities whatsoever thereunto belonging, with all priviledges, Preheminencies, Proffits, and Liberties by Sea and Land, as by the said Grant, amongst other things therein contained, more at large appeareth. Now know all Men by these Presents, that we the Councell of *New England* for and in respect of the good and speciall service done by Sir *Ferdinando Gorges* Knight to the Plantation, from the first attempt thereof unto this present, as also for many other causes, us hereunto moving, and likewise for and in consideration of the payment of one hundred and sixty [35] pounds of lawfull *English* Money unto the hands of our Treasurer, by *Robert Gorges* Sonne of the said Sir *Ferdinando Gorges* Knight, whereof, and of every part and parcell whereof the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires Executors and Assignes are for ever acquitted and discharged by these presents, have given, granted and confirmed, and by these presents, do give grant and confirme unto the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires and Assignes for ever, all that part of the Main Land

Land in *New-England* aforefaid, commonly called or knowne by the name of *Meffachufiack*, fittuate lying and being upon the North-Eaft fide of the Bay, called or knowne by the name of *Meffachufet*, or by what other name or names foever it be, or fhall be called or knowne, together with all the Shoars and Coafts along the Sea, for ten *Engliffi* miles in a ftreight line towards the North-Eaft, accounting one thoufand feven hundred fixty yards to the mile, and thirty *Engliffi* miles (after the fame rate) unto the Main Land through all the breadth aforefaid, together with all the Iflets and Iflands, lying within three miles of any part of the faid lands (except fuch Iflands as are formerly granted,) together alfo with all the Lands, Rivers, Mines and Mineralls, Woods, Quarryes, Marffes, Waters, Lakes, Fifhings, Huntings, Fowlings, and Commodities and Hereditaments whatfoever, with all and fingular their appurtenances, together with all Prerogatives, Rights, Jurifdictions, and Royalties, and power of Judicature in all Caufes and Matters whatfoever Criminal, Capital and Civil, arifing, or which may hereafter arife within the Limits, Bounds, and Precincts aforefaid, to be executed according to the great Charter of *England*, and fuch Lawes as fhall be hereafter eftablifhed by Publique Authority of the State affembled in Parliament in *New-England*, to be executed and exercifed by the faid *Robert Gorges* his Heires and Affignes, or his or their Deputies, Lieutenants, Judges, Stewards, or other officers thereunto by him or them affigned, deputed or appointed from time to time, with all other Priviledges, Franchifes, Liberties, and Immunities, with Efcheats and cafualties thereof

[36] arifing, or which fhall or may hereafter arife within the faid

Limits and Precincts, with all the Intereft, Right, Title, Claime, and Demand whatfoever, which we the faid Councell and our Succelfours now of right have or ought to have, and claime or may have, or acquire hereafter in or to the faid portion of Lands, and Iflands, or any the Premiffes, in as free, ample, large and beneficiall manner to all intents, conftitutions, and purpofes whatfoever, as we the faid Councell by his Majefties faid Letters-Patents, may, or can grant the fame (faving and alwayes referving) unto the faid Councell, and their

Succelfours,

Successours, and to the court of Parliament hereafter to be in *New-England* aforesaid, and to either of them power to receive, heare, and determine all and singlar Appeale and Appeales of every person and persons whatsoever, dwelling or inhabiting within the said Territories, and Islands, or either or any of them to the said *Robert Gorges* granted as aforesaid, of and from all Judgments, and Sentences whatsoever given within the said Territories, to have and to hold all and every the Lands and Premisses above by these presents granted (except before excepted) with their and every of their Appurtenances with all the Royalties, Jurisdictions, Mines, Mineralls, Woods, Fishing, Fowling, Hunting, Waters, Rivers, and all other Profits, Commodities, and Hereditaments whatsoever, within the Precincts aforesaid, or to the said Lands, Islands, or Premisses, or any of them in any wise belonging or appertaining, to the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires and Assignes for ever, to the onely proper use and behoofe of the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires and Assignes for ever more; to be held of the said Councill, and their Successors, *per Gladium Comitatus*, that is to say, by finding 4 able Men conveniently armed or arrayed for the Warres to attend upon the Governour for any service within fourteen dayes after warning, and yeilding and paying unto the said Councill one fiftieth part of all the Oare of the Mines of Gold and Silver, which shall be had, possessed, and obtained within the Precincts aforesaid, for all services and demands whatsoever, to be delivered into the Tower of *London* in *England*, to and for the use of his Majesty his

[37] Heires and Successours, from time to time; And lastly know ye, that we the said Councill have Deputed, Authorized, and Appointed, and in our place and stead have put *David Thomson* Gent. or in his absence any other person that shall be their Governour, or other Officer unto the said Councill, to be our true and lawfull Attourney and Attourneys, and in our name and stead to enter into the said Lands, and other the Premisses with their Appurtenances, or into some part thereof in the name of the whole, for us and in our names to have and take Possession and Seisin thereof, and after such Possession and Seisin thereof, or of some other part thereof had and taken, then
for

for us and in our name to deliver the same unto the said *Robert Gorges* or his Heires, or to his or their certain Attourney or Attourneys to be by him or his heires appointed in that behalfe, according to the true intent and meaning of these Presents, Ratifying, Confirming, and Allowing, all and whatsoever our Attourney or Attourneys shall do in or about the Premisses, or in part thereof by vertue of these Presents. In witnesse whereof, we have affixed our Common Seale, the thirtieth day of *December* in the yeare of the Reigne of our Sovereign Lord *JAMES* by the Grace of *GOD* of *England, France* and *Ireland*, King, Defendor of the Faith, &c. the twentieth, and of *Scotland* the fifty sixth.

*Lenox*³⁴³ *Hamilton*.³⁴⁴

Arrundell Surrey.

Barn. Goach.³⁴⁵

Robert Mansfell.³⁴⁶

Wi. Boles.³⁴⁷

CHAP. XXIV.

³⁴³ Lodowick Stuart, second Duke of Lennox, eldest son of Esme Stuart, Lord Aubigny, was High Chamberlain and Admiral of Scotland; and before the accession of James to the English throne, was representative of Scotland to the Court of France. He filled many important offices in the royal household, being a cousin of the sovereign, and was one of the few who shared and merited the confidence of the King. He was created Earl of Richmond, 1613, Earl of Newcastle and Duke of Richmond in 1623, shortly before his death, which suddenly took place in February, 1624.

³⁴⁴ James, the third Marquis of Hamilton, and second Earl of Cambridge. His first distinction was at the coronation of Charles I. in 1625, on which occasion, being then nineteen years of age, he bore the sword of State in the royal procession. Espousing the cause of the monarch who had bestowed many

honors upon him, he was defeated at the battle of Preston on August 20th, 1648, and a few days later taken prisoner. After several months of confinement he was beheaded on the 9th of March, 1649.

³⁴⁵ The name of Dr. Barnaby Goche does not appear among the charter members of the Council for New England. He was Doctor of Civil Law, Chancellor of Worcester, and at the time of his death by the plague, February, 1625, was Master of Magdalen College, Cambridge.

³⁴⁶ Sir Robert Mansfell was the third son of Sir Edward Mansfell, and was knighted by the Earl of Essex for his valor at the siege of Calais in 1596. He is spoken of by Goodman and the author of the *Secret History of the Court of James First*, as a man conspicuous for courage and honesty.

³⁴⁷ William Boles was clerk of the Council at a salary of twenty pounds per

Captaine John Mafons the meanes of Interestiſg the Scotiſh Nation into that of New-Scotland.

Captaine *John Maſon* was himſelfe a man of action and had been ſometime Governour of a Plantation in the *New-Found-land*, his time being expired there, he returned into *England*, where he met with Sir *William Alexander* who was Mr. of requests to his Maieſty for the realme of *Scotland*, but ſince Earle of *Starline*, who hearing of Captaine *Mafons* late comming out of the *New-Found-land* was deſirous to be acquainted with him. To that end he invited him to his houſe, and after he had throughly informed himſelfe of the eſtate of that Country, he declared his affection to Plantation, and wiſht the Captaine to be a means to procure him a Grant of the Planters thereof for a portion of land with them, who effected what he deſired.³⁴⁸ The Captaine underſtanding

per annum. He was not one of the charter members, but was elected to the office of clerk, November 16th, 1622, having been propoſed at a meeting of the Council on the 12th of the previous July.

³⁴⁸ A paper relating to the title of Nova Scotia, diſcovered by the editor in the Office of the Public Records in London, and to be found printed in the Maine Historical Society's *Documentary Series*, Vol. IV., indicates that De la Tour firſt called Alexander's attention to the territory which he finally acquired. This document ſtates that "Mons. de la Tour," who "firſt diſcov-

ered that country" about 1606, "and built for his owne habitation the place called St. John's Fort upon ye River of St. Johns — coming into Scotland engaged Sir William Alexander, then Secretary of State to King James, to ſupport his right in it, and for that end to take part of ye intereſt, and in order thereto Sir William Alexander obtained a grant of it from K. James — 1621. This grant was by K. Ch. I. conferred on Sir William Alexander (now Earle of Sterlin) 1625.

"In the yeare 1630. ye Earl Sterlin for Conſideracons Conveyes Part of Nova Scotia to Mr de la Tour wth right of

56 *A Description of New-England.*

understanding how far forth I had proceeded in the businesse of *New-England*, advised him to deale with me for a part of what we might conveniently spare, without our prejudice within the bounds of our Grant. Sir *William Alexander* intending to make himselfe sure of his purpose, procured his Majesty (for what could they not do in those times in such cases) to send to me to assigne him a part of our Territories, his Majesties gracious message was to me, as a command agreeing with his pleasure, to have it so. Whereupon an instrument was presently drawn for the bounding thereof, which was to be called *New-Scotland*, which afterwards [39] was Granted him by the King under the Seale of *Scotland*. Thus much I thought fit to insert by the way, that posterity might know the ground, from whence businesse of that nature had their originall.³⁴⁹

CHAP. XXV.

of a Marquesat &c. and this was confirmed under ye Great Seale of Scotland."

This does not conflict with the statement of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, but adds to it. Gorges, it would seem, supposed that Sir William Alexander's first knowledge of the country had been derived from Mason; while the fact was that the shrewd Scotchman had already studied the subject under the expert instruction of De la Tour, and without revealing his motives, sought Mason in order to elicit further knowledge upon the subject, which he succeeded so far

in doing as to become convinced that the southern boundary of the territory he purposed acquiring should include a portion of the territory belonging to Gorges and his associates.

³⁴⁹ Why this charter was given under the seal of Scotland is not apparent. The arbitrary act of James in compelling Gorges and his associates to part with their property to a favorite without consideration, was, as Sir Ferdinando intimates, in accordance with the spirit of an age in which personal rights were ignored by those holding power.

CHAPTER XXV.

Lieutenant Colonell *Norton*⁸⁵⁰ undertaking to settle a Plantation on the River of *Agomentico*,⁸⁵¹ if I pleased to beare a part with him and his Associates, this Gentleman was one I had long known, who had raised himselfe from a Souldier, to the quality he had from a Corporall to a Serjant, and so upward he was painfull and industrious, well understanding what belonged to his duties in whatsoever he undertooke, and strongly affected to the businesse of Plantation, having acquainted me of his designes, and of his Associates, I gave him my word, I would be his intercessour to the Lords for obtayning him a Patent for any place he desired, not already Granted to any other, but conceaving he should be so much the better fortified, if he could get me to be an undertaker with him, and his Associates upon his motion; I was contented my Grand-Son *Ferdinando* should be nominated together with him and the rest, to whom was past a Patent of twelve thousand Acres of land upon the East-side of

⁸⁵⁰ Francis Norton was a man of high character, "of a bold and cheerful spirit and full of love to the truth," we are told by Edward Johnson, the author of *The Wonder Working Providence*. After the death of Mason, Norton was appointed by the widow to manage the estate of her husband in New England; but, the colony not prospering, Norton, who was living at the Great House in Portsmouth, decided to remove to Boston, where he became active in military as well as civil affairs. He made a visit to his native land in 1647, but shortly

returned to resume his active duties in the land of his adoption. After a busy and useful career, he died, July 27th, 1667, full of years and honors.

⁸⁵¹ This word, or, as the Rev. Edward Ballard gives it, Anghemakti-koos, is said to signify Snow-shoe River, on account of the fact that the pond forming its source is shaped like a snow-shoe. The river and town built upon its banks were named subsequently, by Gorges, Gorgiana, but later York, from the English town by that name captured by Cromwell's army in 1644.

of the River *Agomentico*, and twelve thousand of Acres more of land on the West-side to my said Son *Ferdinando*, here-upon he and some of his Associates hastened to take possession of their Territories, carrying with them their Families; and other necessary provisions, and I sent over for my Son, my Nephew Captaine *William Gorges*, who had been my Lievtenant in the Fort of *Plymouth*, with some other Craftsmen for the building of houses, and erecting of Saw-[40] Mills; And by other shipping from *Bristol*, some Cattell with other servants, by which the foundation of the Plantation was laid, and I was the more hopefull of the happy successe thereof, for that I had not far from that place, *Richard Vines*, a Gentleman and Servant of my owne who was settled there some years before, and had beene interressed in the discovery and seisure thereof for me, as formerly hath been related, by whose diligence and care those my affaires had the better successe, as more at large will appear in its proper place.

CHAPTER XXVI.

What followed the breaking up of the PARLIAMENT in such discontent.

THE King not pleased with divers the passages of some particular persons, who in their speeches seemed to trench farther on his Royall Prerogative than stood with his safety and honour to give way unto, suddainly brake off the Parliament, whereby divers were so fearfull what would follow so unaccustomed an action, some of the principall of those liberal

erall

erall fpeakers being committed to the Tower, others to other Prifons, which tooke all hope of Reformation of Church-Government from many not affecting Epifcopal Jurifdiction, nor the ufuall praftife of the Common Prayers of the Church, whereof there were feverall forts, though not agreeing among themfelves, yet all of like diflike of thofe particulars, fome of the difcreeter fort to avoid what they found themfelves fubject unto, made ufe of their friends to procure from the Councell for the affaires of *New-England* to fettle a Colony within their limits, to which it pleafed the thrice honoured Lord of *Warwick*³⁵² to write to me then at *Plimouth*, to condefcend that a Patent might be granted to fuch as then fued for it, whereupon I gave my [41] approbation fo far forth as it might not be prejudiciall to my Sonne *Robert Gorges* interefts, whereof he had a Patent under the Seale of the Councell, hereupon there was a Grant paffed as was thought reasonable, but the fame was after enlarged by his Majefty and confirmed under the great Seale of *England*, by the Authority whereof

³⁵² To Robert Rich, Earl of Warwick, the Plymouth, as well as the Maffachufetts Bay Colony, here alluded to, were indebted for their patents. On all occafions he exhibited a friendly difpofition towards the emigrating Puritans, which was probably one occafion of difcontent which fubfequently arofe againft him in the Council for New England, of which he was for a confiderable time the president. Leighs, the feat of the Earl, was unfurpaffed in beauty by any eftate in the kingdom, which caufed Calamy, in a fermon on the occafion of the Earl's death, to relate this anecdote, that a gentleman of wit

had told the Earl, "that he had good reason to make fure of heaven, as he would be a great lofer in changing fo charming a place for hell." The Earl was wont to liften to long difcourfes by Puritan preachers, and often had them come to his houfe and repeat fermons to which he had liftened in public. Although thefe preachers fpared not, and painted the licentiousnefs to which he was addicted in the moft lurid colors, the fermons, it is faid, did not caufe him to change his immoral courfes. He died April 19th, 1658, at the age of feventy-one years.

whereof the undertakers proceeded so effectually, that in a very short time numbers of people of all sorts flocked thither in heapes, that at last it was specially ordered by the Kings command, that none should be suffered to go without licence first had and obtained, and they to take the Oaths of Supremacy and Allegiance, so that what I long before prophesied, when I could hardly get any for money to reside there, was now brought to passe in a high Measure, the reason of that restraint was grounded upon the severall complaints, that came out of those parts, of the divers sects and schismes that were amongst them, all contemning the publique Government of the Ecclesiasticall State; And it was doubted, that they would in short time, wholly shake off the Royall Iurisdiction of the Sovereigne Magistrate.

The





CHAPTER I.

Shewing the reasons of my desire and others my Associates to resigne the grand Patent to his Majesty, and the dividing of the Sea coasts between the Lords who had continued constant favourers and followers thereof.

AFTER I had past all those failings in my first attempts you have hard of, and had undergone those home-stormes afore spoken of by those of *Virginia*, I would willingly have sat down in dispaire of what I aymed at, but was stirred up and encouraged by the most eminent of our company, not to give over the businesse his Majesty did so much approve of, whose gracious favour I should not want, and whereof I had already sufficient prooffe. Hereupon I began againe to erect my thoughts how ought might be effected to advance the weak foundation already laid, when as so it pleased God to have it, in the yeare 1621. after the Parliament that then sat brake off in discontent, I was sollicitated to consent to the passing of a Patent to certain undertakers who intended to transport themselves into those parts, with their whole Families,

62 *A Description of New-England.*

lies, as I shewed before. The libertie they obtained thereby, and the report of their well doing, drew after them [43] multitudes of discontented persons of severall sects and conditions, in so much that they began at last to be a pester to themselves, threatning a civill war before they had established a civill form of Government between themselves, and doubtlesse had not the patience and wisedome of Mr. *Wanthrop*,³⁵³ Mr. *Humphreys*,³⁵⁴ Mr. *Dudly*,³⁵⁵ and others their assistants, and others been the greater, much mischief would suddainly have overwhelmed them, more then did befall them, notwithstanding amongst those great swarmes there went many that wanted not love and affection to the Honour of the King, and happinesse of their Native Country, however they were mixt with those that had the State of the established Church Government in such scorne, and contempt, as finding themselves in a Countrey of liberty, where tongues might speake with out controule, many fuller of malice,

³⁵³ John Winthrop, the first governor of Massachusetts, born in Groton in Suffolk, England, January 12th, 1588; died March 26th, 1649. No note can do justice to this noble man. It has been truly said of him that, "in his magnanimity, disinterestedness, and moderation, in his mingled firmness of principle and mildness of temper, in his harmonious character, consistent life, and well-balanced mind, the Father of Massachusetts reminds us of the great 'Father of his country,' and is the only name in our history worthy to stand as a parallel to Washington."

³⁵⁴ John Humphrey, one of the six original grantees of the Massachusetts Bay Charter. He was son-in-law to the Earl of Lincoln, and settled in 1632 at

Swampscot. He occupied the position of a magistrate until 1641, when having met with severe losses by fire he returned to England, where he died.

³⁵⁵ Thomas Dudley, born in 1577, at Northampton, England, commanded a company of English volunteers under Henry IV. of France at the siege of Amiens in 1597. When the persecution of nonconformists became violent, he joined the host whose faces were turned to the western wilderness over seas; and when John Winthrop became Governor he was made an assistant, and soon after Deputy-Governor of Massachusetts. In 1634 he succeeded Winthrop as Governor, and in 1644 was made the first Major-General of the Colony. He closed his useful career July 31st, 1653.

malice, than reason, spared not to speake the worst that evill affections could invent, in so much that the distance of the place could not impeach the transportation thereof to the eares of those it most concerned, and who were bound in Honour and Justice to vindicate the State, he was so eminent a servant unto.

Hereupon the King and his Councell began to take into their serious considerations, the consequences that might follow so unbridled spirits, and the Lords interested in the Government of those affaires, finding the Kings dislike thereof, considered how to give his Majesty (and his Councell of State) some satisfaction for the time to come, *Anno.* 1622. Thereupon it was ordered that none should be suffered to passe into *New-England*, but such as did take the oaths of Supremacy, and Allegiance; This held sometime, but was omitted till the yeare 1631. till which time, as the daily reports brought over word of their continued misdemeanors, for that at last, I my selfe was called upon (with others)

as being the supporter and Author of all that was distastfull: I confessed (indeed) that I had earnestly fought

[44] by all meanes the planting of those parts by those of our own Nation and that for divers weighty considerations approved of by the King and his Councell, but could not expect that so many evils should have hapned thereby, this answer served for the present, but could not wipe away the jealousie that was had of me, though I laboured continually to put off the scandalous opinion of such as daily did endeavour to do me evill offices, which I found with the latest, but was thereupon moved to desire the rest of the Lords that were the principall actors in the businesse, that we might re-

figne

figne our grand Patent to the King, and passe particular Patents to our selves, of such parts of the Countrey along the Sea coast as might be sufficient for our owne uses, and such of our private friends, as had affections to works of that nature. To this motion there was a generall assent by the Lords, and a day appointed too, for the conclusion thereof.³⁵⁶

CHAPTER II.

The meeting of the Lords for the dividing of the Coast.

THE time being come their Lordships had appointed, an act was made for the resignation of the Patent, with the confirmation of our particulars, where the bounds were thus laid out; Beginning from the Westermost parts of our bounds Eastwards, where the Lord of *Mougrave*³⁵⁷ began his limits, and ended the same at the river called *Hudsons* river, to the Eastward of the river was placed the Duke of *Lenox*, since Duke of *Richmond*,³⁵⁸ to the end of Sixty miles Eastward, next to him was placed the Earle of *Carlile*,³⁵⁹ next to him

³⁵⁶ This was April 25th, 1635.

³⁵⁷ Edmund, third Baron Sheffield, one of the corporate members of the Council for New England, was a noted commander under Elizabeth, who made him Governor of the Brill and Knight of the Garter. He was created Earl of Mulgrave by Charles I., in February, 1626. His death took place in 1646.

³⁵⁸ James Stuart, the fourth Duke of Lennox, created Duke of Richmond in 1641. He held many offices of honor, as Lord Great Chamberlain, Admiral of Scotland, Warden of the Cinque Ports, and Knight of the Garter. His liber-

ality was great; and when Charles I. found himself opposed by the Parliament, Lennox subscribed forty thousand pounds to aid his sovereign. He was one of the faithful friends who followed Charles to the scaffold, and after the execution took charge of his body and saw it decently buried at Windsor. He survived until 1655.

³⁵⁹ Sir James Hay, of Pitcorthie, County of Fife, created Viscount Doncaster in 1618, and Earl of Carlisle in 1622. He accompanied King James to England, and was one of the first favorites of that monarch who sent him as ambassador

[45] him the Lord *Edward Gorges*, next to him was settled the Marquesse *Hamilton*, next to to him Captaine *John Mason*; And lastly my self whose bounds extended from the middest of *Merineck*³⁶⁰ to the great River of *Sagadehocke* being Sixty miles, and so up into the Maine land one hundred and twenty miles.

CHAPTER III.

The Orders that are settled for the Government of my said Province.

BEing now seized of what I had travelled for above forty yeares, together with the expences of many thousand Pounds, and the best time of my age loaden with troubles and vexations from all parts, as you have heard; I will now give you an account in what Order I have settled my affaires in that my Province of *Maine* with the true forme and manner of the Government, according to the Authority granted me by his Majesties Royal Charter. First, I divided the whole into eight Bailywicks, or Counties, and those againe into Sixteene severall Hundreds, consequently into Parishes and Tythings as People did increase, and the Provinces were inhabited.

CHAP. IV.

ambassador to the Court of France. He obtained more distinction for aptitude in superintending extravagant banquets than for skill in diplomacy. He died in 1636.

³⁶⁰ This river is variously called the Monomack, Malamake, and Merrimack, which last title it still bears. Until the appearance of the Rev. Edmund F. Slaf-ter's work on Champlain, it was the gen-

erally accepted belief that it was the Rivière du Gast of the noted French navigator; but this theory can be no longer maintained. The aboriginal meaning of the name is the river of strong current, from *Merruk*, strong, and *Auke*, place. Its other title, Monomack, was from *Mono*, an island, and *Auke*, place; a name bestowed upon it on account of the many islands in the river.

[46]

CHAPTER IV.

The manner and forme of the Government I have established for the ordering of the Publique Affaires within my Province of MAIN.

First, in my absence I assigned one for my Lievetenant or Deputy, to whome I adjoyned a Chancellour for the determination of all differences arising between party and party, for *Meum & Tuum*, onely next to him I ordained a Treasurer for receipt of the Publique Revenue, to them I added a Marshall for the managing of the Militia, who have for his Lievetenant a Judge-Marshall, and other Officers to the Marshall Court, where is to be determined all Criminnall and Capitall matters, with other misdemeanours or contentions for matters of honour and the like: To these I appointed an Admirall with his Lievetenant or Judge, for the ordering and determining of Maritime Causes, whose Court is onely Capable of what passeth between party and party, concerning Trades and Contracts for Maritime Causes, either within the Province or on the Seas, or in forreigne parts, so far as concernes the Inhabitants, their Factors or Servants (as is usuall here in *England*: Next I ordered a Master of the Ordnance, whose office is to take charge of all the publique stores belonging to the Militia both for Sea and Land, to this I joyne a Secretary for the publique service of my selfe and Councill, these are the Standing Councillours, to whom is added eight Deputies to be elected by the Free-houlders of the severall Counties, as Councillours for the state of the Country,

Country, who are authorized by vertue of their places to fit in any of the aforesaid Courts, and to be assistants [47] to the Presidents thereof, and to give their opinions according to Justice, &c. That their is no matter of Moment can be determined oft, neither by my selfe, nor by my Lievetenant in my absence, but by the advice and assent of the whole body of the Councell, or the greater part of them, sufficiently called and summoned to the Assembly.

That no Judge or other Minister of State to be allowed of, but by the advice and assent of the said Councell, or the greater part of them, as before.

That no Alienation or sale of Land be made to any, but by their Councell and assent, be it by way of gift for reward, or service, or otherwise whatsoever.

That no Man to whom there hath beene any Grant past of any Free-hould, shall alienate the same without the assent and license of the said Councell, first had and obtained.

That in case any Law be to be Enacted, or repealed, Mony to be levied, or forces raised for publique defence.

The summons thereof to the severall Bailiwicks, or Counties, is to be issued out in my name, but with the consent of the said Councell, by vertue whereof, power is to be given to the Free-houlders of the said Counties respectively, to elect and choose two of the most worthy within the said County, as Deputies for the whole, to joyne with the Councell for performance of the service, for which they were called to that assembly, all appeales made for any wrong or injustice committed by any the severall officers of any the standing Courts of Justice, or authority of any other person or persons.

For the better ease of the Inhabitants of the severall Bailiwicks

wicks or Counties, there is assigned one Lievtenant, and eight Justices, to administer Justice for maintenance of the Publique Peace, according to the Lawes provided; These Officers and Justices to be chosen and allowed of by my selfe, or any Lievtenant in my absence, with the assent of the said Councill, belonging unto me.

[48] As for the Constables of the hundreds, Constables of the parishes, with the severall Tything Men of every parish to be chosen by the Lievtenant and Justices of the severall Counties to whom such oathes are to be administered, as by the Councill, and my selfe, or Lievtenant shall be thought fit

That every hundred shall have two head Constables assigned them, and every parish one Constable and four Tything Men, who shall give account to the Constable of the parish of the demeanour of the Housholders within his Tything, and of their severall families; the Constable of the parish shall render the same accompt fairely written to the Constables of the hundred, or some of them, who shall present the same to the Lievtenant and Justices at their next sitting, or before if cause require, and if it be matter within the power of the Lievtenant and Justices to determine of, then to proceed therein according to their said authority, otherwise to commend it to my selfe or my Lievtenant and Councill.

These few particulars I have thought fit to commend (as briefly as I can) unto all whom it may please to take notice thereof, heartily desiring they will not be spareing modestly to censure what they conceive proper to be amended, in that I chose rather to serve such whose wisdom, moderation, and judgements

judgements exceed my owne, them passionately or willingly to persist in my private fancy, or to be aggrieved at, or envy their better judgements.

[49]

CHAPTER V.

My answer to some Objections.

BUT hearing that it is objected by many, if there be such hopes of Honour, Profit, and Content in those parts, how comes it to pass that your self have not tasted thereof in all this time, having imployed so many of your owne servants as by this discourse it seemes you have done, and yet nothing returned. As this objection is just, so I hope a reasonable answer will satisfie any reasonable man, whom I desire in the first place to consider, that I began when there was no hopes for the present but of losse, in that I was yet to find a place, and being found, it selfe was in a manner dreadfull to the behoulders, for it seemed but as a desert Wilderneffe replete onely with a kind of *Savage* People, and overgrowne trees. So as I found it no meane matter to procure any to go thither much lesse to reside there; and those I sent knew not how to subsist, but on the provisions I furnished them with all.

Secondly I dealt not as Merchants or Trades-men are wont, seeking onely to make mine owne profit, my ends being to make perfect the through discovery of the Countrey,³⁶¹
(wherein

³⁶¹ The full benefit of this statement should be accorded to Sir Ferdinando Gorges. In all his acts and in his various writings, his motives appear to have been elevated above the mercenary spirit

of his trading compatriots. His zeal for discovery and colonization was always conspicuous, maintaining a clear glow even after the mists of age had gathered about him

(wherein I waded so far with the helpe of those that joyned with me) as I opened the way for others, to make their gaine, which hath been the meanes to encourage their followers to prosecute it to their advantage. Lastly I desire all that have estates here in *England* to remember, if they never come neare their People, to take accounts of their endeavours what they gaine by those courses.

Besides, when there is no settled Government or ordinary course of justice, which way is left to punish offenders or mispenders of their masters good, do not servants, nay [50] Sons the like in these parts, and are there not many that mispend the estates their Fathers left them, yet I have not sped so ill (I thank my God for it) but I have an house and home there; and some necessary meanes of profit by my Saw-Mills and Corne-Mills, besides some Annuall receipts sufficient to lay a foundation for greater matters, now the Government is Established.

Let not therefore my evill fortunes or hinderances be a discouragement to any, seeing there are so many presidents of the happy successe of those that are their owne Stewards and disposers of their owne affaires in those parts, nay such as I have sent over at my owne charge at first, are now able to live and maintaine themselves with plenty and reputation; So, as to doubt of well doing, for that another hath not prospered, or to be abused by those he trusted, is to despaire without a cause, and to loose himselfe without tryall. Thus much I presume will clear the objection made by my example, and give comfort and courage to the industrious to follow the presidents of those more able to act their owne parts, than I have beene for causes spoken of.

CHAPTER VI.

The benefits that forreigne Nations have made by Plantation.

NOW I will onely remember some of the benefits that may arise by Plantations, and will begin with those Princes, our Neighbours, who have laid the way before us; but to speake of all the goods that may ensue, Plantations is a subject too large for my intencion at this time, who do strive for brevity. By some of those Plantations made by our Neighbours, we see what greatnesse it hath brought them to, that have undertaken the same, as namely the King of *Spain* [51] and *Portugall*, the one settling himselfe in the parts of *America*, called the *West-Indies*, the other situate in *Brazill*,³⁶² the Southern part of the same Continent, and that part peopled in the infancy of that Plantation, as well with base and banished persons, as other noble and generous spirits, yet the successe thereof hath answered their expectation. Besides, we have seene what great riches were drawne by the *Portugalls*, by meanes of their severall plantations in the *East-Indies*, out of those vast and mighty Princes Territories, that filled the whole World with Spices, and other Aromaticque Druggs, and excellent rare curiosities not vulgarly

³⁶² Brazil was discovered by Vincent Pinzon in 1500, and was first named the Land of the Holy Crofs by Pedro Alvarez, who in the same year suffered shipwreck upon its coast. It was explored by Vespucci four years afterwards, and in 1530 was divided by the King of Portugal into captaincies. The

spectacle of the wealth which Portugal and Spain were deriving from their distant possessions, Brazil and the West Indies, the latter discovered by Columbus in 1492, served as a constant irritant to Englishmen; and Sir Ferdinando Gorges but mildly reflects the general feeling of the time.

72 *A Description of New-England.*

vulgarly knowne to forreigne and former Ages in these Northerly parts of the World.

Those Rarities and Rich Commodities, invited some of our Nation to dive into farther search how we might partake thereof, without the favour of forreigne Princes, and having, after the way was once opened by private Adventurers, and some relish had of the proffits that might arise by those employments, the Adventurers, Merchants, and others, noble spirits combined together to make it a more publique buisnesse, worthy the honour of this Nation, and reputation of the Undertakers, who having amassed a stock of many hundred thousand, entred so far into it, that the trade so began and continues to this present day, though not agreeable to the common hopes conceived thereof, but had the ground beene laid as was advised, it had growne to a far greater certainty than now it is like to have.

But the *Hollanders* better experienced in Martiall Affaires, were taught to know there is a difference betweene having gotten a trade and keeping it, that there is no safety in depending upon the will of another, when it is possible to secure themselves of what they had in possession, this made them fortifie where they found it convenient, and so to settle the forme of their Government and course of Trade upon such a foundation, as should promise continuall growth without diminution, upon change of humour of those they traded with, if left to their mercilesse discretion.³⁶³

That

³⁶³ Sir Ferdinando had in view the operations of the Dutch in the East Indies, especially the building of Batavia, the capital of Java, and their bold seizure of the coast of Brazil; hence he

feared the tenacious spirit of this enterprising people in the new world, but his fears proved in this case groundless. In the original the last "to" is repeated, evidently a typographical error.

[52] That by the same course they are like in short time to out our Nation of that little trade left us, who I could wish would yet in season seek how to settle a better foundation in such other places (as if I be not deceived) it is possible they may, thereby, not only make good their present profits, but advance it to a far greater, and make their attempts more honourable and more safe than now they are.

But seeing I am not able to persuade men of better judgement how to manage their practicable affairs, it shall content me to set out my opinion of the excellent use that may be made of those Plantations we have now on foot, especially that of *New-England*.

CHAPTER VII.

AS for those in the Islands of the *Virginians*, it is apparent they may be made of excellent use, if handled as they ought to be, both for the present and future, whereof I will speak no more, because so well known already: That of *Virginia* might very well brag of it selfe, if the Planters did but endeavour to settle some Plantations further up into the Maine, and to travaile in raising such Commodities as that Clime will afford for Trade and Commerce with their Neighbours and such of our owne Nation, as want what they have. For if I be not deceived, that Clime will afford both Wines of severall natures, Flax, Hemp, Pitch, and Tarre, if not Sugars, and Cottons, for it cannot but be as proper for any of those commodities as any other country lying in the same Clime. But these particulars depend upon the wise-

dome of the Governours, and industry of the inhabitants to whom I commend the farther consideration and execution thereof as time and opportunity will give leave, not [53] doubting but if they follow the Sunnes setting, they will meet with better things than are yet spoken of, if they be fought for.

As for that of *New-England*, where I am chiefly interested, by reason of the time and meanes I have spent in the prosecution of that businesse, it is easie to be observed (partly by what I have said) what Commodities may be raised out of those Climes, and how miraculously it hath succeeded, and we may justly conclude it hath been brought to what it is, by the speciall Grace of *GOD* alone, the more to make illustration by the manifestation of his powerfull operation, in effecting for us what we could not expect from his Divine Goodnesse.

At our first discovery of those coasts, we found it very populous, the inhabitants stout and ware-like; the Countrey plentifull in graine and other fruits and roots, besides Deere of all sorts, and other Animals for foode, with plenty of Fish and Foule for their sustentation; so that they could not say (according to the manner of their living) they wanted any thing Nature did require.

As for their civill government, that part of the Country we first seated in, seemed to be Monarchicall by the name and title of a *Bashaba*,³⁶⁴ his extent was large, and had under him

³⁶⁴ Each tribe had its *sachem*, or as the tribes in the northern part of New England pronounced it, *sachemo*. Corrupted by the English, this word was metamorphosed into *sagamore*. Sir Fer-

dinando Gorges was doubtless mistaken in supposing the word which he spells here *Bashaba*, but in another place *Bashabas*, to be a title instead of a name. As before stated, a powerful chief of the Penobscot

him many great Subjects, such as were Allecanry³⁶⁵ with them to the Warre, some thousand some fifteen hundred Bow-Men, some more others lesse, these they called *Sagamores*.

This *Bashaba* had many enemies, especially those to the East and North-East, whome they called *Tarentines*, those to

Penobscot tribe bore the name *Bessabes*, *Betsabes*, or *Bashabas*; and hearing his name frequently used by the Indians, the English adopted the idea which was consonant with their own conception of government, that the name was a common title of a great monarch, just as the title King, Emperor, or Tzar, was given to European rulers; while in fact it was but the name of a Penobscot chief. A careless reading of Captain John Smith's account has led Gorges and other writers to make this supposed monarch rule over all the tribes westerly from the Penobscot to and even beyond the Piscataqua; yet Smith, in enumerating the various sachems between and near these rivers, only says that "they hold the bashabes of the Penobscot the chief and greatest among them." There is nothing, however, to show that these chiefs were under monarchs who bore a common title; indeed, all that we know of the Indian character militates against such a theory. These people were broken up into petty tribes constantly at war with one another. Fiercely selfish and jealous, they seem to have possessed no purpose which could unite them together to promote the common welfare. But that the word *Bessabes* or *Bashabas* was the name and not the title of a chief of the Penobscots, we learn both from Lescarbot and Biard. Says the former of these writers, who calls him by his name, *Bessabes*, and tells us that his successor's name was *Asticou*, a brave and redoubtable warrior: "A la place desquels, avoit esté élu par les Sauvages un nommé *Bessabes*, lequel de-

puis notre retour a esté tué par les Anglois et au lieu de icelui ont fait venu un Capitaine de dedans les terres nommé *Asticou*, homme grave, vaillant et redouté." Father Biard also, in his *Relation*, speaks of this chief as follows: "Ils nous offroyant encores que s'il nous plaisoit de demeurer avec eux, ils estoient trois Capitaines *Betsabes*, *Aguiqueon* & *Asticou*; desquels un chacun prétroit pour sa part dix de nostre troupe (puis que nous restions trente), & nous nourriroit jusques à l'an suivant, quand les navires Françoises arriveroient à la coste." These extracts, aside from other considerations, ought, it would seem, to dispose of the theory hitherto held, that a great Indian monarch entitled a *Bashabas* once reigned over the tribes of Maine. *Vide Histoire de la Nouvelle France, par Marc Lescarbot, Vol. II. p. 534 et seq., Paris, 1866; Relation de la Nouvelle France, etc. Faicte par le Pierre Biard, a Lyon, MDCXVI. p. 35.*

³⁶⁵ That is, in alliance with them. The *Tarentines* were the fiercest of the eastern tribes and dwelt along the seacoast north of the Penobscot. The *Sockbigones*, as Gorges calls them, or, as they have been denominated by other writers, the *Sokokis*, dwelt about the mouth and along the shores of the Saco River. A considerable settlement of these Indians was at *Pigwacket*, the *sandy land*, now the site of *Fryeburg*. Both the *Tarentines* and the *Sokokis* belonged to the people known as the *Abenakis*, i. e., *Eastlanders*, or, according to *Vetromile*, *Eastern fathers*.

76 *A Description of New England.*

to the West and South-West, were called *Sockbigones*, but the *Tarentines* were counted a more war-like and hardy People, and had indeed the least opportunity to make their attempts upon them, by reason of the conveniency and opportunity of the Rivers and Sea, which afforded a speedy passage into the *Bashabaes* Country, which was called *Moasham*,³⁶⁶ and that part of the Country which lay between the *Sockbigones* Country and *Moasham* was called *Apislama*.³⁶⁷ The *Massachifans*³⁶⁸ and *Bashabaes* were sometimes Friends and sometimes Enemies as it fell out, but the *Bashaba* and his

People seemed to be of some eminence above the [54] rest, in all that part of the Continent; his owne chiefe abode was not far from *Pemaquid*, but the Warre growing more and more violent between the *Bashaba* and the *Tarentines*, who (as it seemed) presumed upon the hopes they had to be favoured of the *French* that were seated in *Canada* their next neighbours, the *Tarentines* surprised the *Bashaba*, and slew³⁶⁹ him and all his People near about him, carrying away his Women, and such other matters as they thought of value; after his death the publique businesse running to confusion for want of an head, the rest of his great *Sagamores* fell at variance among themselves, spoiled and destroyed each others people and provision, and famine took
hould

³⁶⁶ Moasham, as Gorges calls it, is denominated by Smith *Moshoquen*, and is doubtless the mysterious word which we are told in *Purchas* was the ancient title of Maine; namely, *Marwooshen*. It is here confined properly to the domains of the Penobscot Indians.

³⁶⁷ This seems to refer to the country about Portland, including Cape Elizabeth and the coast east of the Presumpscot.

³⁶⁸ The Massachusetts Indians.

³⁶⁹ Lescarbot charges the English with having slain Beffabes, which he would naturally have done had any Englishmen been with the Tarentines or near enough even to have incited them to war. This statement, with the French accounts, fully identifies the Penobscot chief with the mythical monarch of Maine.

hould of many, which was seconded by a great and generall plague, which so violently rained for three yeares together, that in a manner the greater part of that Land was left desert without any to disturb or appease our free and peaceable possession thereof, from whence we may justly conclude, that *GOD* made the way to effect his work according to the time he had assigned for laying the foundation thereof. In all which there is to be noted, the next of the Plantations before spoken of, were not performed but by Warre and Slaughter, and some of them with Murther of so many millions of the Natives, as it is horror to be spoken of, especially being done by the hands of Christians, who alone of all People in the World professe the gaining of all Soules to *GOD* onely by preaching the Gospell of *CHRIST JESUS* our Sole Redeemer, and all this done, as being presented, persecuted, not persecuting; but let us be silent and confess, that that is best done that *GOD* doth himselfe, and next we must know, that what he suffers to be done, is not for us rashly to censure, but to give him the Glory for all, whose will we desire may be done hereon as, &c.

Yet I trust we may be humbly bold to believe that when God manifesteth his assistance unto his people, he gives them cause to believe he will not leave them till they leave him.

The benefits already received, and what Time and Industry may produce.

AS for the benefit which may arise by such Plantations especially those our Nation is in travaile with at present, first we find by daily experience what numbers of shipping and Marriners are employed thereby. Next how many thousands of the subjects are transported into those parts, that otherwise might have settled themselves under foreigne States to the prejudice and hinderance of our owne Manufactors said overthrow of that kind of trade, whereas by planting where they do, that is not only prevented, but new Trades imposibly to be raised. Further, it prevents our neighbours from occupying those territories that so diligently (according to their powers) sought to possesse themselves thereof, who by that meanes might easily (as it were) besiege us on all sides, that we should neither be Southward, nor follow our fishing Craft in *New-Found-Land*; or upon those coasts, but by their permission.

But the same advantage by means of those Plantations lyes now in our power, if the King shall have occasion to make use thereof; besides so large a continent abounding with so many excellent Lakes, of so mighty extent, from whence issue so many rivers, such variable kinds of soiles, rich in fructification of all manner of seeds or graine, so likely to abound in mineralls of all sorts, and other rich gaine of commodities

modities not yet to be known, besides Furs of several kinds, both usefull and Merchantable, proper for foreigne Markets.

[56]

CHAPTER IX.

Shewing more particularly the honor, content, and profit of those undertakings.

TO descend from those generalls to more particulars, what can be more pleasing to a generous nature then to be excercised in doing publique good. Especially when his labour and industry tends to the private good and reputation of himselfe and posterity and what monument so durable, as erecting of Houses, Villages, and Townes; and what more Pious then advancing of Christian Religion amongst People, who have not known the excellency thereof, but seeing works of Piety and publique good, are in this age rather commended by all, then acted by any; let us come a little nearer to that which all harken unto, and that forfooth is profit.

Be it so, art thou a Labourer, that desirest to take paines for the maintenance of thy selfe, the employments in Plantations gives the not onely extraordinary wages, but opportunity to build some House or Cottage, and a proportion of Land agreeable to thy fortunes to set thy selfe, when either lameness or other infirmities seize on thee, hast thou a Wife and a Family, by plantation thou buildest, inclosest, and dost labour to live, and enjoy the fruits thereof with plenty, multiplying thy little meanes for thy Childrens good when thou art no more.

But art thou of a greater fortune and more gloriously spirited

80 *A Description of New-England.*

ited, I have tould thee before what thou may'ft be affured of, whereby it may appeare thou fhalt not want meanes nor opportunity to exercife the excellency of thine own juftice, and ingenuity to govern and a t the beft things, whether [57] it be for thy felfe or fuch as live under thee, or have their dependency, or hopes of happineffe upon thy worth, and vertue as their cheife; neither are thefe parts of the World voide of opportunity to make a further difcovery into the vaft Territories, that promifeth fo much hopes of honour and profits (formerly fpoken of) to be raifed to pofterity by the meanes and opportunity of thofe great and goodly Lakes and Rivers, which invite all that are of brave Spirits to feeke the extent of them. Efppecially fince it is already known that fome of thefe Lakes containe fifty or fixty leagues in length, fome one hundred, fome two hundred, others four or five hundred, the greateft abounding in multitude of Iflands fit for habitation the land on both fides, efppecially to the Southward fertile, and pleafant, being between the degrees of forty foure and forty five of latitude, and to the weft of thefe Lakes that are now knowne, they paffe by a maine River to another Sea, or Lake; which is conceived to difembogue into the South-Seas, where the *Savages* report, that they have a Trade with a Nation, that comes once a yeare unto them with great fhips, and brings fhooes and bufkins, kettles, and hatchets, and the like, which they barter for Skinnes, and Furrs of all kindes. The people being cloathed with long robes, their heads bald or fhaven, fo as it is conceived they muft be *Catayons* or *Chinawaies*³⁷⁰ whatfoever

³⁷⁰ That is, the people of Cathay or Northern China. This was in the line of the common belief that it was poffible to gain intercourfe with India and China by

whatsoever they be, were the strength of my body and meanes answerable to my heart, I would undertake the discovery of the uttermost extent thereof and whosoever shall effect the same, shall both eternize his vertues, and make happy such as will endeavour to partake thereof.

But I end and leave all to him, who is the onely author of all Goodnesse, and knowes best his owne time to bring his will to be made manifest, and appoints his instruments for the accomplishing thereof, to whose pleasure it becomes every one of us to submit our selves, as to that mighty GOD, and Great and Gracious LORD, to whome all GLORY doth belong.

FINIS.

by traversing the continent westward. The Indians, becoming acquainted with this belief, naturally fell in with it, and, encouraged by their eager questioners, romanced on the subject *ad libitum*. It has remained, however, for our more profane times to realize this dream of the past, doubtless indulged in through life

by Sir Ferdinando Gorges, by establishing intercourse between the dwellers of our western shores and the *Catayons* and *Chinawaies*, who indeed, "clothed with long robes, their heads bald or shaven," come in great ships and exchange their commodities for our own.



A Breefe Answer

TO

CERTAYNE FALSE, SLANDEROUS, AND
IDLE OBJECTIONS

MADE AGAYNST

S^r FERD. GORGES, KNIGHTE.

Written in the Gatehouse

By SIR FERDINANDO GORGES,

JUNE 14th, 1601.



A breefe answer to certayne false, slanderous, and idle objections made agaynst S^r Ferd. Gorges, knighte, as if he had ben a man of purpose imployed to practize the ruine of the late Earle of Effex, playnly shewing the untruthe and impossibility therof. Written in the Gatehouse.³⁷¹

To the ho^{ll} and discreete who ar nether partiall in affection nor voyde of understandinge.

IN this my discourse, I coulde have ben contented to have intreated my ho^{ll} and worthy frenndes (who have always knowne mee by many likelyhoods and probabilityes, more then in the discourse it selfe I shall speake of) to implore their labors to have satisfyed any reasonable man for the disprovinge of that w^{ch} is so co^monly and slaunderously bruted of mee: but that I know it needelesse, in as muche as every wise and vertuose nature, duly wayinge what is sayd wth every circumstance, will not of the love they beare to vertue it selfe, seeke to approve and manifeste their owne wisdoms and generouse mindes by contradictinge the vanity of the

³⁷¹ *Vide* Cotton MSS., British Museum, Julius F., VI. fol. 423; and the *Archæologia*, published by the Society of Antiquaries, London, Vol. XXXIII. pp. 247-261.

the worlde, or condemninge the base natures of those that be so lavish in censuring of any whome they have knowne or hearde to have alwayes helde the reputaçon of an honest man, espetially at that time when his case is such that hee nether can or may make a free answer for the approbaçon of his innocency therein. I am not ignorant, how the distemper of the time hath caused the idle humors of men's braynes, that ar almoste in a frenzy wth the mallice of theyr hartes, to disgeast it selfe into theyr untamed tongues, and now findinge a subject of whome they may freely speake, they spare not to make apparant the vildnes of theyr natures. An other kinde of creature I have heard of that will heare nothinge but wth theyr eyes, see nothinge but wth their eares, for what shaddow they see they will force it to be a substance, and in som cases all substance must bee but shaddowes; so heddy or senseles the common people ar, carefull only to swimme wth the streame, and will not bee capable of understandinge themselves, or sensible of any other kinde of vertue in others, who (although they cannot deny the truthe, or enter into the reason for w^{ch} thinges were don, yet will they say somethinge to ease theyr stomacks, and speake like themselves) will curse and rayle at the innocente, as if theyr concaytes were gospels, or the reports (w^{ch} they have uncertaynly receaved) oracles. But I know the ho^{ll}, wife, and vertuouse, as they ar sparinge to censure evell of a well deserving minde, so can they, and will, (I ashure my selfe,) both judge and speake the truthe, to the approvinge of my honest affection to my deceased freinde (howsoever I may seeme to acknowledge my selfe to have forgotten my duety to her Ma^{ty}, for w^{ch} my offence I acknowledge my selfe to have
receaved

receaved mercy and iustice). To this I know som booke-wife gallant may happely carpe at my labors, bycause it wantethe ether forme, eloquent wordes, wise sentences, or any other such like exceptions, w^{ch} (I confesse) may be justly taken unto it; but my hope is that the worthy and those of iudgmente will looke into the matter and sence and beare wth these faultes, and also pardon these defectes of my rude and harsh manner of writinge; remembringe it is the labor but of a playne souldier, and on that is no scholler, who is desyrous only to deliver the truthe in its owne nature and kynde for the fatisfyinge of his ho^{ll} and privat freindes, and not the travayle of a cunninge sophiste y^t will take upon him to make white black, and black white; such learninge I never affected, if I had, my leasure would never have afforded mee time to practise it.

Peruse this therfor wth patience, I pray you, and censure not of on parte untill ye have read the whole, for each doubte that may arise will be answered wth that w^{ch} doth follow; and the heavenly God open your eyes, and give y^r heartes understandinge that ye may sensibly feele (w^{ch} I doubt not but you will when you have read that w^{ch} followethe) the wronges w^{ch} I have receaved by those false imputacions wherwthall I am charged; in the meane time assiste mee, I desyre you, wth your prayers to the Almighty, that he will give mee patience in this my untimely afflictions to indure unto the ende that his divine pleasure will lay upon mee, to whose æternal protection I hartely commende y^u. From the Gatehouse, the 14th of June, 1601.

CAP. I.

CAP. I.

The unlikelyhood and impossibility that I could consente to the betrayinge of my L. of Essex.

GREAT is the disadvantage that a man hathe, who is to justify his innocency in those thinges for w^{ch} he is condemned by the worlde, w^{ch} for the most parte is blinded in affection, or ignorant of the truthe, for whatsoever hee can say or write is read or hearde wth a præjudicate opinion, every on beleeving that a man is bounde to speake for himselfe, or to excuse his owne faultes. Notwithstandinge, sithence the truthe beareth no shame, or needethe to be deckd wth no colours but its owne, never blushing, how disgracefully soever respected, I offer the examinacōn of that w^{ch} followethe to the wise and discrete, who will (I doubt not) confesse, if I weare as able to make it appeare that I did not forget my duety to her Ma^{ty}, to whome I must acknowledge it was moste due, as I am able to prove I discharged my faythfull love to my Lo. of Essex, I should not need to be now behouldinge to any for my life, or indure y^t miserable affliction I doe, by w^{ch} meanes I have brought my selfe and my estate to ruine, how innocent soever my harte were from intendinge any evell, or knowinge any evell to be intended or purposed to the person or authority of her Highnes.

And I hope no mā did ever esteeme mee to be ether a foole or a mad man; but if I had consented to the ruine of the Earle of Essex I had shewed myselfe to have ben bothe.

For

For was there ever any that had his witts or understandinge that would enterprife such a matter and not compounde for his rewarde, or at the least be freed himselfe from all after daungers? And the world may see that nether of these I have don; and unto mee I am assured it is to apparence, for I do continually feele the heavy indigna^õn of her Ma^{ty} justly to lye upon mee; and besides that I have all places of commaunde and commodity taken from mee to the undoinge of my selfe and mine, my person is still detayned in prison where how longe I shall remaine God only dothe knowe, or after what manner I shall com out, when I do, whether as a banished, a confined, or a dead man, but if otherwise, I must accknowledge it to bee more of her Ma^{tyes} gratiouse and infinite mercy then of my merit, or by mee to be expected, by reason of any promise or composition that ever I ether made, propounded, concluded, or thought on. And for matter of rewarde I am so far from expectinge any as I shall thinke myselfe infinitely happy to enjoy my life and liberty, wth leave only to seeke my fortune where I shall finde best meanes to make it. But if any thinge had ben voluntarily don by mee to the prejudice of the Earle, shurely this needed not to have befallen mee. If it be objected, notwthstandinge, all this misery I suffer is but a color to blinde the worlde wthall, I must answer, I know my reputa^õn and estate doth not depende upon the vulgar or greater parte of the people, but only upon her Ma^{tyes} gratiouse favor, and the estima^õn and regarde theyr Lo^{pps} have of mee, whome if I could have satisfied would have ben a sufficient warrante and protection to have avowed my proceedinge whatever I had don in that behalfe. And if I have no neede

to make use of any such polefy in respect of fatisfyinge the worlde, muche lesse have those by whose authority I still remayne in durance. Therfor out of question it is not don for polefy nor indured of mee for pleasure, but only inflicted for a punishmente for my offence. Agayne, let them behoulde (that this thinke) who is in possession of all that ever I had, and they shall finde that they ar the freindes and allyes of those, whome it is faide I did practise wthall. And doth any man thinke so great a wronge could be offered mee, if I had so well deserved as it is sayde or imagined I did, by bringinge to lighte and ruin so daungerouse a practise, and so great an enemy, as that was beleevd the Earle woulde have ben? No, no, it standethe not wth nature to endure, if I could will or chuse, therfor no reason to beleewe it.

Further, I desyre that all men should know, that I am not ignorante what it is and how unworthy an enterprife it were, for any of reputacō to accepte or undertake to be treacherouse where hee pretendethe faythfull and unfayned love, and I will speake thus much for my owne parte, nether to deceave others nor to flatter myselfe, ther was yet never any man to whome I protested love unto that afterwarde I could possibly hate, though I cannot as an only freinde love many at once, nor yet like him that doth unjustly hate the person of love, much lesse condiscinte to the betrayinge of him, to such as were his enemyes, and to mee no assured freindes.

Lastly, in this my discourse it is to be noted, that whatsoever I did confesse or could have don was but of matter acted and consulted of from the laste of January 1601 to the 9th of February 1601; and that I had not hearde from my Lorde in 2 yeares before, till the letter hee sente for mee
to

to com upp. Also, that hee never unfoulded any thinge to mee but his purpose and a desyre to be free and secure from the malice and powre of his private enemyes. That hee had matter sufficiente to penne them from the person and presence of her Ma^{ty} whensoever hee should have meanes to have a free and safe accessse to her himselfe. And I, perceivinge that hee intended to make his way by force wherth to resiste any opposition of (those he called) his enemyes, before I would joyne with him I expected and conditioned to assure me uppō his soule and salvacon hee intended no prejudice to the person of her Ma^{tye}; secondly, not to take by force or unjust meanes the life of any, but to proceede in the course of his complaynte to the Queene and psecution of his enemyes accordinge to the lawe and justice of the lande. Thus much his Lo^{pp} in effecte acknowledged at the barr the day of his arraynmente; wherfor if (as it is manifest) I knew nether of his intende before the instant, nor perswaded him to any treasonable action, how could I bee employed by any to practize upon him as it is sayd (though unprobably) I was?

The contrary will appeare when the truthe (that for a season may be sicke but yet will never dye) shall com to lighte, for I always advised him, and bound him by oathes, to his allegiance, shewed him in his extremity the safest course, although hee could not lay hould on it; but if I had ben employed to practise upon him, I might have found meanes to have ben continually at his hande, nether would I have heald him to any justifiable a course, nor ever advised him to keepe himselfe from any lawfull advantage his enemyes might have agaynst him, and evermore to deale
upon

upon good groundes, and never to violate ether lawe or conscience.

Howbeit I heare that S^r Christop. Blunte hathe confessed former practises and purposes more then ever I heard of, or would have condiscended unto if I had ben acquainted wth them; wherfor (if so it were) I was deceived by his oathe and protestaçon, and not hee by mee for any thinge I did. And I assure myselfe that when the Almighty God his will is to bringe to lighte the truthe, the worlde will confesse I have ben most unjustly and falsely belyed by those reportes that have ben so confidently bruted of me. In the meane time, I pray you to examine the particulars, wth my answers and y^r judgments,⁸⁷² and afterwarde speake accordinge to y^r vertues and noblenes of your mindes in the defence of the innocent what you thinke or knowe.

CAP. II.

The cause and manner of my goinge to S^r Walter Rawly, and my conference w^t him, not any wayes prejudiciall to the Earle his proceedings.

TO com to the particulars of those objections wherby it seemethe to be most manifeste I was imployed to practise agaynst the Earle. First, I will beginne wth that conference I had that Sunday morninge wth S^r Wal. Rawligh, at what time, it is sayde, I did laye open all his counsell and purposes. The likelyhood and truthe of this is best

⁸⁷² The examination of Sir Ferdinando Gorges here referred to, as well as that of the other friends of Essex, may be found in the Public Records Office, London, and a copy in the Brit-

ish Museum; Add. MSS. 4128, fol. 23. The copy of the examination of Gorges which follows this *Breefe Answer*, is from the manuscript in the British Museum.

best to bee understoode if you consider the cause of my goinge unto him and the manner therof.

First, I was sent unto that morninge by Sr Walt. Rawligh to com in all haste to Durram Howse, to speake wth him, and by any meanes I was to go by water. But before I wente, I advertised my Lord of as muche, shewing him wthall the direction and manner how I was assigned to goe (w^{ch} I needed not to have don if I had purposed any treachery), who upon councell and deliberation was willinge I should goe, but directed to speake wth him upon the Thames, the w^{ch} I observed, and to take wth mee a garde for the securinge of my returne, doubting least any thinge might bee purposed for the impeachinge therof.

Next is to be considered the time, w^{ch} was full nine of the clock before I went from Essex Howse, before w^{ch} it is well knowne that her Ma^{ty} and the Ll^{ds} were advertised of my Lord his preparation (though the particular of his intende was not knowne), and had given order for the drawinge in of men from the villages about the citty for the present defence of her Ma^{ties} person, and resolved that certayne of the Lordes of the Councell should go to Essex House, to assaye if, by commande or admonishment, the presente fury could have ben appeased, or at least deferred, till better provision of offence or defence might bee made, and those LL. were arrived at Essex Howse comming by lande as soone as myselfe that come and went by water, the w^{ch} could not bee upon any resolution taken of any conference wth Sr Walt. Raleigh, for they were departed from the Courte before hee could bee arrived there. Also, in the morninge before this ther had ben a commaundement given to the Citty, that
every

every man should bee in a reddines both in person and armes, but notwithstandinge to keepe wthin his howse, till they receaved further directions or commaundement what to doe.

As for the conference that passed between S^r Walt. Rawley and myselfe, it was only this, I protest to the Almighty God. When his boate came to mee (he beinge all alone, and I havinge wth mee two Gent^l) he toulde mee that hee had sente for mee to admonish mee to make all haste out of the Towne downe to my charge, for that there was a warrant out for the sendinge mee to the Fleete.³⁷³ For his kinde advertisement I gave him thankes, but tould him wthall (for that I knew the present occasion would presently discover itselfe) that it came to late, for I had ingaged my selfe in an other matter; hee farther inquiringe of mee what it was, I told him ther were two thousand Gentlemⁿ that had resolved that daye to live or dye free men. Hee pronounced unto mee, hee heard not of it untill that morninge, but did not see what they were able to do agaynst the Queenes authority. My answer was, it was the abusinge of that, by him and others, that made so many honest men resolve to seeke a reformaçon therof. His replie was, that no man was wthout

³⁷³ Stow tells us that this prison standing in Fleet Lane, now Fleet Street, was "so called of the Fleet of Water running by it, and sometime flowing about it." He also says that it was "reckoned the best Prison of any in this City, for good Rooms, and other Conveniences, the benefit of an open Yard and Garden, inclosed with a very high Wall and Fence. To this Prison, Persons are committed for Contempt of

Orders &c. in the High Court of *Chancery*; or upon Debt, when they by a Writ of *Habeas Corpus* remove themselves thither from another Prison." This old prison was consumed in the great fire of London, and no picture of it seems to have been preserved. *Vide A Survey of the Cities of London and Westminster*, by John Stow. London, 1720, Vol. I. pp. 256, 280.

wthout a colour for theyr intente, and therfor advifed mee to looke unto my felfe, and to remember my duety and allegiance. I answered, "I knew not any mā that did not more refpect his allegiance then his life, as the ende would make apparent;" and thus hee parted to the Courte and I to Effex Howfe.

In all this what was by mee difcovered or don that became not a free fpirit, or wherin did it give prejudice to my Lorde his proceedinges? If it bee demaunded of mee why I did not take S^r Walt. Rawley then; — Firft, it was not a matter I ever purpofed, though many vaynely perfwaded mee fo to doe; fecondly, I never held it an a^{ct}e fittinge amongeft mē to betray any that refofe truft in us, and hee puttinge himfelfe into my handes, wth what honefty could I have avowed fo barbarous a deede, unleffe hee had given mee the firft occafion by violent deedes and unkinde words, for ether of the w^{ch} I was both refolved and prepared. And at my returne I delivered unto my Lorde particularly what had paffed between S^r W. R. and my felfe, all w^{ch} he received wth his applaufe and good likinge, as it is to be testified by thofe that were then prefent and yet alive.

CAP. III.

The delivery of the Lordes was by the Earles allowance and direction whē they had no hope to make any other benefit of the.

AS concerninge my delivery of the LL. of the councell, w^{ch} if I had not don (as it is fayd) the Earle might have made what compofition hee had lifted, both for himfelfe

felfe and others, it beinge a matter of the greateſt confequence, and moſt likelihood of truth, I thought it fit to give the more particular accounte of my doinge in that behalfe, ſhewing (wthall) bothe the reaſons and neceſſity that that adviſe and reſolution was to be followed; therby approvinge my purpoſe unto my Lorde and the reſt to be good, and it was the only counsell to be followed, and abſolute hope that remayned for him, in ſo great an extremity.

For, when I ſaw that in all likelyhood and reaſon ther was no hope left for him to recover his owne howſe, perceavinge that all the portes and paſſages were guarded and defended, and findinge that diverſe, both nobles and others, had quited him, ſom of the beſt that remayned deviſinge by what meanes to ſhift for themſelves, all w^{ch} I was nether ſo voyde of judgement or underſtandinge but did well know and perceive; in conſideration wherof, when wee came to the chayne at Ludgate, and ſaw it defended wth men armed and in good order, havinge their officers and theyr heades, and ſeeminge no meanes that wee had ſufficient to force them, I thought it beſt to attempte ſom other courſe, and firſt I made tryall, by fayre language to Sir John Lucy³⁷⁴ (that had commande of the troopes w^{ch} defended that place), to give my Lorde a free paſſage; in the w^{ch} not prevaylinge, I returned to my Lorde, to ſhew him how impoſſible it was for him to paſſe that

³⁷⁴ Sir John Leviſon, as the name is ſpelt both in Camden's *Hiſtory of Elizabeth* and the *Sydney Papers*, commanded the Queen's Guard, and prevented the return of Eſſex to Eſſex Houſe by ſtretching a chain acroſs the ſtreet near the weſt gate of St. Paul's Church, and oppoſing his paſſage with

troops. He was ſubſequentely an important witneſs in the Earl's trial. Sir John's name is ſpelt, by Sir Robert Cecil in his correſpondence, Luſon, which perhaps gives a clew to its pronunciation. If pronounced "Luſon," with the ſtreſs upon the firſt ſyllable, Sir Ferdinando might eaſily have miſtaken it for "Lucy."

that way, wth the meanes he had, as also to know what other resolution or course hee woulde take; to whome havinge delivered my opinion, I gave him further to understande what I thought fit as the laste and only hope for him to depende on, remembringe him that now hee was to make benefit of the Lords that were in his howse, wthall, if so it pleased him, I would attempte to go alone unto them, and wth them to go to her Ma^{ty}, by whose meanes and sollicitation only ther was hope shee might be drawne to some tolerable condiçons of peace.

To this my opinion I was perswaded by many reasons; as, first, I knew into a greater inconvenience hee could not fall then at the present hee was in, seeing that all hopes hee depended on had fayled him, notwthstandinge I knew the affliction and feare that was apprehended (through the opinion that was conceaved of the greatnes of my Lordes meanes to bee far more then it was) might bee no small reason to perswade an acception of submission wth security rather then to hazarde a course daungerous wth doubt of succeffe; and to bringe this to passe I made the lesse doubt, if I might my selfe have com in a place to have delivered my Lordes tale, or at the leaste so far forth to have possesst her Ma^{ty} of the causes that moved my Lord to this his attempte, and the reasons that drewe the noblemen and gent^l to joyne wth him, wherby the prosequutinge of it wth extremity might have ben deferrd, or the offence of the rest made more excusable; ether of these, as occasions should have offred, I purposed to have prosecuted, as afterwardes in the best fashon I coulde I did, as it is well knowne to som of the Lordes.

Now I was the more confident in this my opinion, out of
VOL. II. — 13 the

the observation I had made of the unwillingnes of the people's dispositions to offer any thinge agaynst my Lorde or any of his, notwithstandinge any proclamations or commaunde that had ben given, wherby I was out of doubt if my Lord coulde (as my hope and advise was to him to do) but have kept himselfe but three houres longer in the citty (wher I was shure his dispayre could not bee so easily perceaved) to have brought ether all or the most of this that I have spoken of to passe. And of this my opinion I was not much deceived, as heereafter you shall perceave. Heereupon, after som doubt that my Lord had made of the impossibility of my recoveringe Essex Howse, and som hope that hee sawe was to be expected, if I could get thither, by that meanes, hee gave mee directions to goe, referringe the manner of my proceedinge to my owne discretion, the time nor place not permitinge any large instructions or directions to be given; wheruppõ I departed, havinge only used the name of my Lord Cheefe Justice³⁷⁵ unto him, mindinge indeede that none shoulde have gon but him. But when I arived at Essex Howse, and had made reporte of as much as I thought fit to his Lor^{pp}, and had defyred him to be goinge, hee refused it, except my Lorde Keeper³⁷⁶ might also go wth him; wherupon I, that knew ther were no delayes to bee used at that time, made replye therunto, as a matter so intended, and therfor defyred theyr Lord^{pps} more at large, in the boate, what was my Lorde his petition and defyre to obtayne from her

³⁷⁵ Sir John Popham.

³⁷⁶ Sir Thomas Egerton was made Lord Keeper of the Great Seal in 1596, and Lord High Chancellor in 1603, at which time he was created Baron Ellef-

mere. In 1616 he was made Viscount Brackley. He died at York House March 15th, 1617, at the age of seventy-seven, and was buried at Doddleston, in Cheshire.

her Ma^{ty}, as also the particular reasons that moved both himselfe and the rest of the nobility to undertake that course they had begunne.

When theyr Lor^{pps} were fetted in the boate, wher my Lo. of Worcester⁸⁷⁷ was also, I first, as breiefely as I coulde, delivered unto them what a number of people there were assembled in the behalfe of my Lo. of Essex, and the doubt what the succeſſe heerof might bee, wth all the daunger that might infue if my Lorde were forced to make his passage over the belly of the subject, to give himselfe a free and safe accessse to the soverayne Ma^{ty}, and therfor that all industry and in-deavor to prevente the one and the other was to bee used, no delays to bee made, nor neece poyntes to bee floode upon; that theyr Lor^{pps}, as the fathers of the kingdom, under her Highness, were now both to shew theyr wisdoms and authoretyes.

Then my next petiçon was, that her Ma^{ty} might know from my Lorde the occasion that forced him and his freindes to joyne themselves together in this loathsome extreame and last refuge of armes, notwthstandinge if my Lorde and they had ben mistaken by any false informaçon, that then all matters might easily have ben pacified.

In

⁸⁷⁷ Edward, the fourth Earl of Worcester. He is extolled by Naunton in his *Fragmenta Regalia* as the most accomplished of the courtiers of Elizabeth in feats of arms and horsemanship. He was, moreover, a wise counsellor, and was appointed Lord Privy Seal by King James. This was an office of great trust and responsibility, as it was the duty of the keeper of the King's private seal to examine all important instruments requiring the royal signa-

ture, and to call the King's attention to anything therein not in accordance with the law of the realm. It was necessary to the validity of an instrument that it should be signed by the King and have his private seal affixed by the Lord Keeper of the Privy Seal, after which it passed to the Lord Keeper of the Great Seal; who having affixed to it the public seal of the realm, its validity was complete. The Earl died on March 3d, 1619.

In the meane time, that her Ma^{ty} would be pleased for the present pacifyinge of the fury of men intraged, as also the security of her owne person and preservation of that blood the w^{ch} was like to be spilte, to graunte a gratiouse assurance that my Lord and the rest might bee free from acceptance of that dayes attempte, and that shee would bee pleased to graunte her gratiouse promise to heare wth her owne eares both what hee was able to say in his owne justification and excuse of his freindes, to whose mercifull feete both hee and they defyred in all humility to throwe downe themselves, so as they might not bee persecuted by any injurious suggestions of theyr privat enemyes for what they had don that day, to prevente whose indirec^t dealinges they had don as they did.

All this theyr Lor^{pps} assured mee to acquaynt her Ma^{ty} wthall, by the w^{ch} time wee were arived to the Courte; then they required mee to follow them, w^{ch} I did into the privy chamber, and theyr Lor^{pps} goinge to the Queene I follicited what they had undertaken so effectually, as I perceaved by those that came up and downe, that ther was som reason to hope of the good successe therof, the rather for that I understand my Lorde Admirall ³⁷⁸ and Mr. Secretary ³⁷⁹ were sent for to resolve on some course to bee taken therein, but at this instant Mr. Secretary received advertisemente that my Lorde was fledd unto his howse, wheruppon it was apparent that then the Earle was at her Mat^{yes} mercy wthout any conditions, and I was instantly committed to pryson, where ever since I have remayned. Thus y^u have seene that my deliv-
ery

³⁷⁸ Lord Charles Howard, of Effingham, and Earl of Nottingham.

³⁷⁹ Sir Robert Cecil.

ery of the L^{ds} was upon advise and direction of my Lorde himselfe, out of the understanding and hope of good thereby to have befallen him, and it was that time when ther was no hope for him to make any other benefit of them, himselfe havinge reason to despaire the recovery of his howse, and indeede no reason to attempte the goinge thither, knowing if hee were driven out of the city his howse could afforde no meanes of defence, and therfor it is falsely sayde that I did it either dishonestly or treacherously, as to all men of honor or wifdom by this it may appeare.

CAP. IV.

It is manifest in all reason that if I had not dt the L^{ds} yet they could not have ben profitable to the Earle.

BUT, admit the Lords had not ben delivered, what hope was ther in reason for him to have receaved any benefit by them? for ther was none of y^m but was much respected and beloved by him, besides two of them were neere allyed unto him in blood, and might have ben suspected for theyr to muche love unto him, espetially they havynge ben so frequent and ordinary wth him in all his former troubles, as also at the instant before this fell out; the other 2, as it was generally beleaved, were esteemed to bee partially inclyned in affection and love towards him, in regarde of the opposition of his enemyes; and therfor as well in nature as honor hee could not admit or condiscnt that they should have indured wronge for his sake; also consideringe that they came thither in peaceable manner, as messingers or mediators to intreate
his

his desistinge from any violente course to bee intended; but, admit it had com unto that, they must have offred their petition unto her Ma^{ty} for theyr owne saftyes, for the obtayninge of her grace and mercy to my Lord and the reste for what had past. Doth any mā thinke that her M^{ty} would not or did not more respect her own honor, saftey, and the publicke peace of her kingdom (all the w^{ch} seemed at that time to bee in question), then theyr Lor^{ppes}? Allthough hee would have ben troubled and perplexed no doubt for them, notwthstandinge it had not ben fit, nor safe, to have spent much time in parlying about theyr freedoms, not knowinge what practises or partes were a foote, espetially seeinge diverse of her nobility ingaged, and others both of great estate and many freindes, and what roote it had taken, or into what head it was growne, could not suddenly be knowne, and therfor to prevente the greater mischeeffe the lesser was to bee chofen.

Wheras it may bee objected, the Prince in her honor would never have suffred the Lordes to perish; termes of honor in case of extremity Princes ar least ceremonious to observe, espetially when they remember, in all humayne actions ther is nothinge w^{ch} wth lesse perill they may not temporize and except then rebellion, in the oppression wherof ther is no greater vertue then expedicon, for that by how muche it is suffred by so much it riseth into degrees of worfe, as a soare that is lingered growes in the ende a cure doubtfull; and therfor knowinge that wise providence is truly more hono^{le} then fonde ceremonyes can possibly bee profitable, in as muche as the on giveth security wth contente, the other threatning daunger wth shame, they should not have
givē

givē any impedimente to her expedition, confideringe farther, that it is better to p̄vente a mischiffe in time then to repent in idle complemente to late.

Befides, what knew her Ma^{ty}, upon a suddē and confideringe the probabilityes aforefayde, but that they might have ben linked in councell and confederacy wth the reſt, or at leaſt have willingly ſtayed there to bee a meanes, if the worſe had not hapned, to have by theyr ſolicita^{ti}ōn drawne her Ma^{ty} to the pardoninge of his offence for the redeeminge of theyr lives; and why ſhoulde ſhee not bee doubtfull or ſuſpitiouſe of this, hearinge how many did applaude if not joyne themſelves in the enterpriſe? Laſt of all, if theſe arguments be not ſufficiente in the concaytes of any not acquaynted wth the poleſyes and reſolu^{ti}ōns of princes, let inquiry be made of the Lordes themſelves, who had reaſon to know as much as others and to hope for the beſte, and I aſſure my ſelfe that they will anſwer that they verely do believe that they muſt have dyed wth the reſte, before the prince would have yealded to more then was afterwardeſ affented unto. And, out of this theyr aſſurance, they have thought themſelves both in honor and nature bounde to requite mee wth any thinge that either was or is in theyr powres, to the ſavinge of my life. But, if ſince they have founde that ſo difficult a matter, wth keepinge my blood from beinge taynted, how unable had they ben to have pacified the princes indigna^{ti}ōn agaynſt my Lorde and the reſt? and it is playne that nether the reſpect of theyr authorities, nor the greatnes of theyr favors, can continew unto mee either my places, or procure from her Ma^{ty} any kinde of meanes, ſo much as to defray the charge of my imprifon-
mente,

mente, much lesse to mayntayne my estate or reputaçon, so small is my gettinge by the on, and so great is my misery by the other; wherby it is manifest I did nothings as a false affected freinde, but do heereby approve my meeninge to my Lorde of Effex was not evell in my delivery of the Lords, nor was it don wthout discretion or understandinge, as well as leave and direction, as also hope of som good therby to have ensued to his Lor^{pp}; nor if they had remayned could they have ben profitable unto him, as by this that hath ben fayde may playnely appeare, therfor if it did not yealde that successe that was desyred ther was no faulte in my endeavors.

CAP. V.

The cause of my confession, and the somme therof no more then my Lorde himselfe might have acknowledged wthout the impayringe of his cause.

NOW, as concerninge my confession, the w^{ch} is the next thinge to bee spoken of, ether why it was so much or any thinge at all? I shall desyre you to consider these 3 thinges; first, if I had refused to have sayd any thinge, it might have ben beleevd that I had ben meerely obstinate; secondly, in seeminge to make a free and playne confession, it was the better to bee credetted that I dealt sincerely and truely; lastely, makinge relaçon of thinges that might seeme of moment to mee, beinge in themselves wayed and considered by theyr judgmentes that were to have them in handlinge, I knew they would appear of no valewe or importe,
as

as by the examinacōn of the particulars may appeare, as also the sequell and tryall, for hee was not condemned upon any thinge in my confession but for that of Drury-house, wherof I was not the first author (as by this it doth or may most playnly appeare,) but was only to acknowledge that the w^{ch} was then alreddy by other men confessed, and if I had denyed it might have ben a just occasion for my freindes to have left mee, whose favors I healde, in hope that I of all others would deale playnely and truely in delivery of my knowledge; and therefore to make it appear I was nether obstinate, nor acquaynted wth any former matter, I seemed so freely to acknowledge those public actions of his the w^{ch} in all reason I knew could not bee concealed, but that of Drury howse I was unwilling to call into my memory, till I sawe so good tokens that it was discovered by others, as I founde it; if I had denyed it, ther had ben no way wth mee but deathe, wherfor, beinge demanded concerninge that matter, I answered what had ben formerly discovered, never accknowledginge other then that it was a private enterprise intended only against certayne particular persons, and no other ende did I know it, had I pronounced to the eternall God, for that w^{ch} others have confest of themselves and theyr purposes, to bee otherwise then it did beare shewe of, and that themselves had publickly protested, I am no ways guilty of, for all mens oathes and protestaōns to mee was of theyr love and allegiance to her Ma^{ty}, and that while I did not knowe but that it had ben lawful for mee to joyne my selfe wth them, som of the w^{ch} number I so dearly loved as ther was nothinge save the daunger of my soule that I would have refused to have don or adventured for theyr sakes, as
in

in the sequell heerof it hath appeared. And the reason why I ackknowledge I had means to have taken or killed S^r Walter Rawlegh, was the better to make it appeare that ther was nether malitiouse or boucherouse course intended to him or any, and also to give him cause to acknowledge himselfe in that respecte behouldinge unto mee, whereby to take from him occaïon to exercise his powre, w^{ch} I knewe to be great at that instante, to my ruine, for I did beleewe hee could not in reason bee so voyde of humane respect as not to requite on courtesy wth an other, as also it was no matter of treason against her Ma^{ty}, but rather manifestaçon of the contrary, approvinge this intente to bee particular agaynst S^r Walf^r Rawly and others.

CAP. VI.

The cause of my cominge to avow my confession, the choyse beinge not in mee, and my Lord his speeches unto mee rather out of his misconceite then any just cause given him of mee.

IF it bee demaunded why I did com furthe and avowe any thinge agaynst him, I must answer, the choyce was no more in mee then in my Lord to have refused to have com to his arraynemente, nor so much neither, for hee could but dye, the w^{ch} he was assured of, and I might have som hope of life if I seemed not wilfull or obstinate. But hee denyinge somthinge that I had confessed, and I beinge at hande so neere as the Gate Howse to the Hall of Westminster, it was thought fit I should bee sent for, to approve it, although the matter itselfe w^{ch} hee did denye was nothinge; for when I
came

came, hee demaunded whether, yea or noe, I advised him from the attempte of y^e Courte? wherunto when I answered I did, I desyred to have it testified by my Lorde of Southampton, then also at the barre. But in truthe what was either my perswasion or dissuasion to prove that hee did urge any suche thinge? Or, put the case it was a question propounded by him to his friendes, as so it was, where every on was to speake his opinion, and I differinge from others, might thinke it no enterprise for my Lorde to undertake, and theruppon might ether dislike or dissuade it, and afterwarde, beinge in question for the same, might deliver in favor of my selfe what my advise was then. This, I say, was nothing to my Lorde of any such momente, in regarde of ether what was don by him or confessed by others, that hee needed to have desyred mee to have ben brought before him.

Agayne, let it bee imagined, that, in private conference betweene my Lorde and mee, I did speake fom wordes that might shew a possibility for him to accomplish his desyre if hee would attempte the Courte, upon w^{ch} privat conference, callinge it to minde, might thinke I could not confesse I had dissuaded him from it, and therfor might conceive it to bee a matter imagined agaynst him rather then truly delivered by mee. As also my confession being the first and only evidence as then was read unto him, although the laste received. But why should I be more excepted agaynst for my cominge thither, beinge brought out of cloase prison, then those that were both neerer unto him in blood and of Ho^{le} authority, that came to justify agaynst him more then I did? w^{ch} as it was not in their choyse as then to do otherwise, much lesse

was

was it in mine, and therfor me thinkes it is an unreaſonable thinge for any to expect an answer of mee, for my doinge as I did in that behalfe, much lesse do I deserve to bee condemned by it. By this y^a fee I could nether do lesse then was done, nor willingly did what I did, that might give cause of dislike or p̃judice unto my Lo., wherfor I doubt not, but, the p̃misses considered, I cannot receive just blame for cominge in place, beinge brought thither by publick authority; and while I was there I did not aggravate any thinge agaynst him, but ether answered in my owne excuse, or to the question hee propounded, shewing to the worlde, w^{ch} I could not conceale, both my greefe and shame to bee so unfortunately miserable, that must bee brought in publick to condemne my selfe and accuse my freinde.

Wheras it may bee objected — Q. What sayd my Lord unto him at the Barre? To the w^{ch} I answer, it were a harde taxe layde upon mee to require of mee a reason of every misconcayte or error my Lo. committed; but, bycause this concernethe my selfe, I am the willinger to acknowledge that hee had in ſom forte just cause for his sayinge and doinge as hee did. First, for that ther had, as then, no other evydence ben read unto him, nor, happely, did hee thinke that any man else had confessed ought, wherfor resolvinge wth himselfe to denye the whole, hee was of opinion that the next way was to disgrace the credit of the reporter, and to lay upon him any imputacōn hee coulede, therby to disprove the likelyhood of the truthe therof. Secondly, for that hee might bee of opinion, or at leaste it mighte so seeme unto him, that I had com thither voluntarily, and that I had my life given mee to justify any thinge agaynst him, out of w^{ch} misconceate

misconceate hee might enter into a rage and mallice towards mee, and therfor out of the bitternes of his spirit hee might speake as hee did, although, of the twoe, I had most cause to bee offended wth him, that had for his sake both undon my selfe and mine, and in his quarrell lost all that I had, and my life, at that time, for oft I knewe, as farfoorth in question as his.

CAP. VII.

The Councell and resolucon of my Lo. of Essex the Sattarday night before hee went into the citty, and the reasons that perswaded his freindes to give theyr assentes therto.

HER Ma^{ty} receaved dayly advertisements of the course of people and greates reforte of Lordes and others to Essex howse, contrary (as it seemed) to her Highnes admonitions to him at the time hee was made keeper unto himselfe, and doubting wthall what the issue therof might bee, the rather in regarde of the eminent causes of suspition that were made apparente, considerenge the discontented natures and dispositions of diverse of those that were most frequent and ordinarily noted to be neerest him, both in councell and affection; and therfor to prevent any inconvenience that might by such a toleration insue, it was determined by her Ma^{ty} that hee should bee sent for before the Lordes of the Councell, whome shee required to admonish him of the manner of his livinge, and to commaunde him to drawe him selfe to a more retyred fashon, or otherwise shee should bee forced to take another course wth him.

Upon

Upon this resolu^{ti}on Secretary Harberte³⁸⁰ was sent to Effex Howse to require the Earle to com before the Lordes of her Ma^{ties} Councell, then at Salisbry court^e,³⁸¹ who havinge delivered his messege, receaved for answer from the Earle, that he desired to be excused for that time, in as much as hee was not well at ease, but the truthe was indeede that hee presentlye apprehended a doubte lease somthinge had ben discovered of what hee had formerly practised, and this suspition was the rather confirmed in him by reason that so hee had ben informed of som of his freindes, who advertised him of as much, to the ende to hasten him forward to the execution of what hee had deeply ingaged both himselfe and them, and therfor imagininge himselfe and his freindes better able to answer what they had don by armes then by lawe, he resolved ether to approve his purpose good or to dye in the defence therof.

But, upon this suddenn mutacon and chaunge of resolu^{ti}on, all his former counsellis and purposes were altered, for nowe hee had made himselfe a defendante that before was resolved to bee an assaylante; such is y^e succeffe of those whose desire is greater then theyr courage, or whose wordes ar not seconded in so desperate a case wth deedes. His freindes upon this beinge assembled, hee acquainted them what had
past,

³⁸⁰ Sir John Herbert was a devoted follower of Cecil, and had been long in his service. He was ambassador to the Danish Court in 1563, and one of the commissioners sent in 1597 by the Queen, to perform the delicate task of dissuading Henry IV. of France from negotiating

a peace with Spain. He was created second Secretary of State on May 10th, 1600.

³⁸¹ Here was formerly the residence of the Earls of Dorset. Dorset Street and numerous buildings now occupy the ancient site of Salisbury Court.

past, and to make his conceaved opinion the more undoubted, hee declared the manner howe hee was assigned to com unto the Lordes, the w^{ch} was privat and by water, makinge no doubte if hee had so gon hee should have presently ben sent to the Tower; and, the better to confirme this in the concayte of the rest, hee declared farther, that hee was advertised that ther were warrantes signed for the apprehendinge of diverse others, wheruppon every man beginninge to distrust the worste, and to thinke how to p̃vent as much as lay in theyr powers, it was p̃sently disputable, whether it were best to attempte the courte or to move the city or to go else where, but the opinion that all was discovered gave reason that the courte was provided sufficiently for defence, espetially ther beinge in our powers no meanes wherwthall to make p̃sent attempte upon it; upon the w^{ch} consideraçon and reasons that designe was given over; then it was demaunded what reason my Lo. had to be assured the citizens would take armes in his behalfe, wherupon after many likelyhoods given, ther was no doubte of that to be made, then ther was no man but p̃sently gave way to that opinion of attemptinge the puttinge them in armes, by whose helpe it had ben in his power to have don any thinge. The while this was in dispute ther came on to the dore, to whome my Lord himselfe wente, and as hee reported, hee was a messenger that came unto him from som of his freindes in the citty, who had sente to let his Lor^{pp} know that ther had ben a brute of som harde measure intended agaynst him, and therfor desyred his Lor^{pp} to acquaint them wth the truthe therof, and wthall to send to them his pleasure what they shoulde doe, for that they were
reddy

reddy and most defyrus to hazard themselves in any thinge to defend him agaynst the mallice of his private enemyes. To this hee returned them many thankes, and wthall sent them worde what had past, promisinge that they shoulde heare more from him that night or the next morninge, willinge wthall that they should stand upon theyr garde, for so would hee, and if they heard hee was assaulted they to com unto his reskewe; if they were, then hee and his freindes would com unto them. This direct message was the thinge that made all doubt of the citizens' forwardnes to joyne wth my Lorde to bee out of question; wheruppon it was resolved, the next morninge to put in execution the resolution of goinge into the citty, such an extremity by his delayses from time to time had hee runne himselfe into, as now his laste hopes were absolutely to depende uppon the giddy multitude, from the w^{ch} daunger nether coulede the importunity of his freindes perswade him, nor his owne knowledge of the doubtfull estate wherin hee stoode make him any thinge the forwarder to the executinge of that hee had begunne. For still, when it came to the issue of actinge, so many difficultyes did appeare as were sufficient to deferre it from day to day, or rather, as I suppose, it being wthhelde by a certayne fatall timerousnes, hee did let passe alwayes the opportunity, in so much as so it hapneth for the most parte, when the execution of great enterprises bee deferred, his purpose began to bee suspected. For her Ma^{ty} sendinge for him to com before her Lordes was the occasion to approve that a guilty conscience is a thousand witnessses, for it was his refusall to go unto them that discovered the certaynty of his purpose to attempte somthinge, although they could not conjecture what

what it was he intended, till the very instante of his goinge into the citty, as since it did manifestly appeare; so far was that from knowledge the w^{ch} had 4 monethes before ben disputed on, and so neere was hee to the toppe of his desyre, if folly and fortune had not hindred it. But by what I have since hearde I am of opinion that som of his owne freindes, observinge his couldnes, did cause this fayned message to bee sente unto him, therby to sharpen his disposition, as also to take all occa^on of doubte from others whome hee founde very unwillinge to hazarde any thinge upon the people's unstable humors; and in bothe these his purposes hee was nothinge deceaved, had that ben all to have ben thought upon. Notwthstandinge ther was not so much credit given unto the people, but that the conclusion and last determinac^on was, that the next morninge, both my Lo. and the rest of the noble men and gentlemen should go on horseback into the Citty, and then if they had founde them backwarde on whome hee depended, so as hee might have reason to despaire in their aydes, they and hee together, beinge to the number of 200 horse, to have presently departed towards any other parte or partes of the kingdom hee had pleased. But if y^e desire to know of mee how it came to passe that hee neglected this councill and went afterwarde on foote, I can say no more to satisfy you, but that such a passion is sudden feare as it maketh a man to runne, not whether councill directeth him, but whether theyr fortunes will leade them, not suffering them to consider of the perill, but makes them often times to refuse the safest meanes, and to neglect the thinges w^{ch} should do theyr security; yet when I demaunded of him how chance hee would go before his horses came, hee answered,

VOL. II. — 15

swered, that hee would not stay for them; but I suspected hee forgot to give directions for them over nighte, as hee undertooke to doe. This I hope will bee sufficient to satisfy those of wisdom and understandinge that the councell and advise hee received from his freindes wrought not his ruine and downefall, but rather his not followinge it; neither yet do I see how it can bee in reason so confidently beleaved that hee was betrayed by those hee reposed a trust in, except in this message promisinge ayde when ther was no suche thinge intended; wherfor I, as I expect salvation, am no wayes guilty, but did verely beleieve it to bee an undoubted truthe, or otherwise I could never have ben drawne to consente to have depended upon them, although it may bee I should not have refused to runne the fortune of the rest as I did, but more unhappy than any other, that am condemned to be false in my affection and treacherously to have betrayed my friendes; but the unlikelyhood therof by this that I have sayde, I doubt not but doth playnely appeare to all indifferent mindes or sounde judgements.

I have declared unto you the truthe, and delivered y^e the reasons as neere as I can, of all that passed, wherby I assure my selfe y^e will rest fully satisfied of my honest meaninge and true love to my Lorde, howsoever it is otherwise understoode; and I do not a little mervayle what it should bee that hath ben the occasion so suddenly to settle and establishe this so false and so loathsome a conjecture of mee. I thinke they that have knowne mee can witnesse (howsoever I must confesse I have offended the Almighty God, and do deserve for my finnes agaynste his divine Ma^{ty} greater punishments then hetherunto I have endured,) yet I have not delighted
my

my selfe in any loathsome or dishonest humor, nor so lived in the place where I have had commaunde that I can bee justly accused to have spent my time ever as a gluttonous drunkerde, a riotous person, or that I could ever subject my nature to accept of bribes, or consente to extortions or unlawfull actions, nor did I ever seeme to be negligent or careless of the truste reposed in mee. If any of these things (I say) could have ben objected or justly approved agaynst mee, havinge so many and so great enemyes as it is knowne I have alwayes had, ther is no doubt but I should have hearde of it longe agoe. As for my faythfull and unfayned love unto my Lorde of Essex, what better demonstracons or assurances can be giuen by any, or who is hee that in effecte did more to approve and assure the same then I have don, it being wth every circumstance wisely considered and truly knowne? For what is ther more to bee looked for of a freinde then to loose all the worlde doth esteeme deereste for his love sake? And so much have I not refused to make apparente. In a word, I protest no man doth live that did more honestly and faythfully love him then I did, nor none did adventure or advise more to have saved his life then myselfe, if it had taken effecte, nether was it don ether in respecte of rewarde or benefit I ever had by him, for estate it is well knowne it was never in his power to make mee; those places and authorities I had were meerely given mee by her Ma^{ty}, much against his likinge, for at that time hee was an earnest fuitor for Sr Cary Raynoldes³⁸² to have had the forte of Plymouth,

³⁸² Carew Reynell, born in 1563, was of 1597, and like him was left behind at an associate of Gorges in the expedition Plymouth, on account of illness, as we learn

mouthe, and his graces of honor were bestowed on mee, as
 bothe before and since hee had don on diuerse others nether
 better deservinge nor worthyer descended then myselfe; and
 yet, bycause y^u shall knowe I did not love him out of a child-
 ish affection, or a base disposition to serve my owne turne by
 his fortunes, I will in a worde give y^u a faythfull and true
 accounte for doinge as I did in that behalfe. First, I noted
 him to bee in the opinion of her Ma^{ty} of greatest esteeme,
 and best worthy of any subiecte. At that time houldinge
 myselfe bounde to reverence her affections and applaude
 her choyce, I was willinge to make shewe therof by the
 approbation of the use of my service to bee at his disposition
 and commande; and yet I must confesse I did not this abso-
 lutely before I founde in him a willingenes and desyre to
 imbrace it, not yet nether untill both by my freindes and
 my selfe I had made observation of his worthe and vertue,
 the w^{ch} inwardly I perswaded myselfe had ben rooted in him,
 that outwardly made him so bewtifull, and so adorned in the
 opinion and the eyes of the worlde as hee was, for, I pray
 you, who was ther that seemed more industrious and carefull
 to norish vertue in all men then hee? Whether hee was
 divine or souldier, a wise commonwealthes man, or a good
 lawyer, to all these he indeavoured to be an excellent bene-
 fector, and a faythfull protector. And who was ther that
 seemed

learn from a letter of Sir William Brown
 to Sir Robert Sydney in the *Sydney*
Papers, where his name is spelled Cary
 Renolds. He was one of the courtiers
 of the virgin queen, and her cupbearer.
 He received the honor of knighthood

from Essex at Dublin, July 12th, 1599.
 He was made governor of Duncannon
 Castle, and, upon the accession of James,
 became usher of the privy chamber.
 He died September 7th, 1624.

ſeemed more willingly to expoſe himſelfe to all hazar-
des and travayle for his princes or contries ſervice then hee?
Who ever more willingly ſpente his own eſtate, and all
that by any means hee coulde get, for the publick good of
his contry? The dayly experience I had therof, and the
undoubted opinion of his good meaninge therin, was the
cauſe that bounde mee ſo inſeperably to him. But if y^e ſay
that in this hee aymed at an other ende then the love of
vertue only; if ſo hee did hee hathe carryed his rewarde wth
him; for my parte, in all my knowledge of him and private
conference wth him, I can nether affirme nor lay any ſuche
thinge to his charge. Thus y^e ſee I nether childiſhly nor
baſely expoſed of my love to my Lorde at the firſt, and I
have helde for an invincible maxime, that ther is no poleſy
to true honeſty, nor love but where true vertue is, and ther-
for it is very unlike I ſhould go ſo much agaynſt my owne
principall as to conſent to betray my freinde, eſpetially for
thoſe partys who had never given mee a cauſe of love to do
any ſuch thinge for them, nor by reaſon of theyr place
could I expeſte the like aſſurance as from himſelfe I had,
for wee finde by com̃on experience, as well as the old
proverbe, that like will to like, and every man will keepe
company wth ſuch as he is himſelfe; hee was of the ſame
profeſſion that I was, and of a free and noble ſpirit. But I
muſt ſay no more, for hee is gon, and I am heere; I loved
him alive, and cannot hate him being dead; hee had ſom
imperfections — ſo have all men; hee had many vertues —
ſo have ſewe; and for thoſe his vertues I loved him; and
when time, w^{ch} is the tryall of all truthes, hath runne his
courſe,

course, it shall appeare that I am wronged in the opinion of this idle age. In the meane time, I p̄sume this that I have sayde is sufficiente to satisfy the wise and discreete; for the rest, whatever I can do is but labor lost, and therfor I purpose not to trouble you nor myselfe at this time any farther.





THE DECLARATION OF S^R FERDI- NANDO GORGES

8 FEBR 160⁰₇



ONE tuesday as I remember before the Insurrection I was sent unto by my Lord of Essex praying me to meet my Lord of Southampton S^r Charles Danvers S^r Iohn Davis & others his Friends at Drury House where I should see a schedule of his Friends names & his projectes to be disputed upon: Whither I came accordingly & found the forsayth Earl S^r Charles Danvers S^r Iohn Davis & one M^r Lyttelton The names were shew'd & numbered to be six score Earls, Barons, Knights & Gentlemen Their Projects were these whether to attempt the Court or the Town, or to Stir his friends in London first or whether both the Court & Town at a instant? The most resolved both the Court & Town were to be attempted first. For mine own part I disliked that counsell my resones ware (that I alledged to them) first to attempt both with those numbers, was not to be thought on, because they were not sufficient and therefore advised them

them to think of something else. Then they would needes resolve to attempt the Court with all desired my opinion. But I prayed them first to set down the matter how they thought it might be done. Then S^r John Davis took ink & paper and began to assign to divers principal Men there several places some to keep the Gate, some to be in the Hall some to be in the Prefence, some in the Lobby some in the Guard Chamber, others to come in with my Lord himself, who should have had the passage given him into the Privy Chamber, where he was to have presented himself to her Mayes^y. —

Having then proceeded thus far I was asked what I thought of it? my answer was I utterly disliked that course: for besides the horror of it wherewith I found myself afflicted I saw an impossibility for those means to accomplish it

The means they did further urge to be sufficient, for as they seemed to assure themselves the greatest resistance that was likely to be made, was by the Guard, and of many of them there was no doubt to be had for they had been my Lord's servants. Notwithstanding I would not condescend to that course Whereupon my Lord of Southampton in a kind of passion demanded this, Shall we resolve upon nothing then? It is three months or more since we first undertooke this. My Reply was. It was more than I knew, I was demanded what I would then advise that my Lord should do. If there be a necessity I answered, he must do somethinge. Let him stir his friends in the City of whom you say he is well assured of, This was so well liked of as we broke up & resolved of nothinge but referred all to my Lord of Essex himself.

After

After this I netheur faw my Lord nor heard any thing from him to any purpose until Saturday night when he resolved the next day to put in practice the moving of his Friends in the City upon the occasion aforesaid. And of my opinion was M^r Lyttleton

FERD: GORGES.





CHARTER OF THE PROVINCE OF MAINE,
GRANTED TO SIR FERDINANDO GORGES

APRIL 3, 1639.



HARLES by the Grace of God King of England Scotland France & Ireland, Defender of the Faith &c.⁸⁸³

To all to whom these Presents shall come
Greeting;

Whereas Sir Ferdinando Gorges Knight hath been an humble Suiter unto us to grant & confirm unto him & his

⁸⁸³ Previous to the date of this Charter, Sir Ferdinando Gorges received from the Council for New England, of which he was a member, the following grants of territory:

1. *August* 10th, 1622: to himself and Captain John Mason jointly, territory lying upon the seacoast between the Merrimac and Kennebec rivers; extending sixty miles inland; with all the islands within five leagues of the premises, to be called the PROVINCE OF MAINE.

2. *November* 17th, 1629: to himself and Captain John Mason jointly, territory north westerly of the foregoing, in the region of Lake Champlain, denominated Laconia; the bounds of which are imperfectly defined.

3. *November* 3d, 1631: to himself, Captain John Mason and others, territory on both sides the Piscataqua River, called the Piscataqua grant. The several patents describing the property conveyed by them may be found printed in full in *Captain John Mason*, edited by

his Heirs a part & portion of the Country of America now commonly called or known by the Name of New England in America, hereafter in these Presents described by the Metes & Bounds thereof, with diverse & sundry Priviledges & Jurisdictions for the Welfare & Good of the State of those Colonies that shall be drawn thither, & for the better Governm^t of the People that shall live & inhabit within the Limits & Precincts thereof, which part or portion of the said Country, we have heretofore amongst other things for us Our Heirs & Successors taken into our actual and real possession, or in default of such actual & real possession formerly taken, We do by these presents for us Our Heirs & Successors take the same into Our actual & real possession. Know ye therefore that of Our special Grace, certain Knowledge & mere motion, we have given, granted & confirmed: and by these presents for Us, Our Heirs & Successors do give grant & confirm unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & assigns, all that Part, Purpart, & Portion of the Main Land of New England aforesaid beginning at the Entrance of Piscataqua Harbour, & so to pass up the same into the River of Newichewannock,³⁸⁴ & through the same unto the furthest Head thereof, & from thence North-westward

by John Ward Dean, A.M., Prince Society, Boston, 1887, pp. 177-183, 189-197, 198-204.

Of this Charter of 1639, there are several copies; one in the Office of the Public Records in London; one in the Massachusetts Archives, and one in the York Records. The latter has been printed in the Historical Collections of Ebenezer Hazard, Vol. I. pp. 442-455, and by comparison with the copy

here printed, will be found to be very imperfect. The reason why the spelling of the York copy differs so much from this may be accounted for by supposing that the original charter, or a copy of it, was read to the scribe, who copied it upon the records and spelt the words in his own way.

³⁸⁴ Now the Salmon Falls River, which still bounds Maine on the west.

westward untill One hundred & twenty Miles be finished, and from Piscataqua Harbour Mouth aforefaid North-Eastward along the Sea Coast to Sagadahoc, & up the River thereof to Kynybequy River, & thro' the same unto the head thereof, & unto the Land Northwestward untill One hundred & twenty Miles be ended, being accounted from the Mouth of Sagadahoc, & from the period of One hundred & twenty Miles afore^d to cross over Land to the One hundred & twenty Miles End formerly reckoned up, into the Land from Piscataqua Harbour thro' Newichawannock River; And also the North half of the Isles of Shoales, together with the Isles of Capawock & Nautican near Cape Cod, as also all the Islands & Isletts lying within five Leagues of the Main all along the aforefaid Coasts between the afore^d Rivers of Piscataqua & Sagadahoc, with all the Creeks, Havens & Harbours thereunto belonging, & the Reversion & Reversions, Remainder & Remainders of all & singular the ^d Lands Rivers & premises, all which ^d part Purpart or portion of the said Main Land, & all & every the Premises herein before named, We do for us Our Heirs & Successors create & incorporate into one Province or County, And we do name, ordain & appoint that the portion of the Main Land & Premises aforefaid shall forever hereafter be called & named the Province or County of Maine & not by any other Name or Names whatsoever, with all & singular the Soil and Grounds thereof as well dry as covered with Water, & all Waters, Ports, Havens & Creeks of the Sea & Inlets of the said Province of Maine & premises, or to them or any of them belonging or adjacent, As also all Woods, Trees, Lakes, & Rivers within the said Province of Maine & premises,

ifes, & the Limits of the fame, together with the fifhing, of whatfoever kind, as well pearls as Fifh as Whales Sturgeons, or any other either in the Sea or Rivers, And alfo all Royalties of Hawking, hunting Fowling Warren & chaces within the faid province of Maine & premifes aforefaid, Deer of all Sorts, & all other Beasts & Fowles of Warren & Chafe, & all other Beasts there, And alfo all Mines & Oar of Gold Silver, Precious Stones, Tin, Lead, Copper, Sulphur Brimstone, or any other Metal or Mineral matter whatfoever within the faid Province or premifes or any of them opened or hidden, & all Quarries there, & all Gold Silver, Pearls, Precious Stones & Ambergreafe⁸⁸⁵ which fhall be found within the f^d province & premifes or any of them & the Limits & Coasts of the fame or any of them, or any part of them or any of them, & all & fingular other profitts, Benefits & Commodities growing, coming accruing or happening, or to be had received or taken within the faid province & premifes Limitts & Coasts of the fame or any of them, And alfo all Patronages & Advowfons, free difpofitions & Donations of all & every fuch Churches & Chapels as fhall be made & created within the faid province or Premifes or any of them, with full power, licence & Authority to build & erect

⁸⁸⁵ Ambergris, which is a fubftance of waxy confiftence, fometimes found floating in large maffes on the fea, and the refult of difeafe in the fperm whale, was of great value, being efpecially ufed in perfumery. It is recorded that in the autumn of 1613, a vefel brought to England a piece of ambergris, "as big as the body of a giant, the head and arms are wanting, but fo foolifhly handled that it brake in pieces. The largeft piece

brought home was not over 68 ounces, which fells for 12 or 15 fhillings an ounce more than fmaller pieces;" and it is further recorded, that "on the 28th of July, 1614, the Virginia fold to the Eaft India Company two boxes of ambergris at 3*l.* 1*s.* and 3*l.* 2*s.* per ounce." *Vide History of the Virginia Company of London*, by Edward D. Neill, Albany, N. Y., 1869, p. 55.

erect or cause to be built & erected so many Churches & Chapels there, as to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns shall seem meet & convenient, & to dedicate and consecrate the same, or cause the same to be dedicated & consecrated according to the Ecclesiastical Laws of this our Realm of England, together also with all & singular & as large & ample Right, Jurisdictions priviledges, Prerogatives, Royalties, Liberties, Immunities, Franchises, Preheminenances & Hereditaments as well by Sea as by Land within the said province & premises, & the precinct & Coasts of the same or any of them, & within the Seas belonging or adjacent to them or any of them, as the Bishop of Durham, within the Bishoprick or County Palatine of Durham in our Kingdom of England now hath, useth or enjoyeth or of Right he ought to have, use, and enjoy within the said County Palatine, as if the same were herein particularly mentioned & expressed, to have & to hold, possess & enjoy the said province & premises & every of them & all & singular other the premises before by these presents granted or mentioned or intended to be granted, with their & every of their rights, members & appurtenances unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns to the sole & only use of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns for ever, To be holden of Us Our Heirs & Successors as of the Mannor of East Greenwich in the County of Kent by fealty only in free and common Soccage,³⁸⁶ & not in Capite
nor

³⁸⁶ Lands were held by various tenures, and before the reign of James I., largely by the sword, or by military service to be rendered to the King; but tenures at this time in socage, or by the plough, became common; "the antient

service reserved on this Tenure being *to plough the lord's land.*" This ancient service was at this time obsolete, and the term "socage" had come to stand for "conventional services, *not* military."

nor in Knights Service for all manner of Services whatsoever, yeilding & paying therefor yearly to us Our Heirs & Successors One Quarter of Wheat, & also yeilding & paying unto Us Our Heirs & Successors the fifth Part of the clear yearly Profit of all Royal Mines of Gold & Silver that from time to time & at all times hereafter shall be there gotten & obtained (if any shall be there found) & the fifth part of all Gold & Silver found upon the Sea, shoar or in Rivers or elsewhere within the bounds & Limits of the said province & premises, & the fifth part of the clear yearly Profit of Pearl Fishing; And We do for us Our Heirs & Successors further grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs and Assigns for ever all Treasure Trove, Goods & Chattels of Felons & of Felons of themselves, Waives, Estraines Pirates Goods, Deodands,³⁸⁷ Fines & Amerciaments

³⁸⁷ The law of deodands is curious enough to engage our attention. Coke informs us that "deodands as well as other forfeitures in general, wrecks, treasure-trove, &c., may be granted by the king to particular subjects as a royal franchise;" and he defines a deodand as being "whatever personal chattel is the immediate occasion of the death of any reasonable creature;" but "no deodand is due" where an infant, under the age of discretion, is killed by a fall *from* a cart or horse, or the like, not being in motion; when, if an adult person falls from thence, and is killed, the thing is certainly forfeited." A curious additional reason given in the case of the infant is that, "such infant being presumed incapable of actual sin," no deodand is needed "to purchase propitiating masses." This gives us the clew to the original use of deodands, or, as the name implies, *Gifts to God*. As it was considered necessary that masses

should be celebrated by the church for the souls of those accidentally killed, and requisite that the church should receive pay for the service, the law of deodands was contrived, not only as a relief to the relatives of the person killed, but to make the payment for masses sure by devoting to forfeiture the very property connected with the accident. In Coke's time, the Roman Catholic church being under the ban of the English government, deodands could no longer be used for the purchase of masses; hence, like everything else which the reigning monarch could make available for the reward of favorites, deodands were seized upon by him for that purpose. The law applied differently to things in or not in motion. Thus, if a man was killed climbing the wheel of a cart not in motion, the wheel alone was forfeited; but if the wheel was in motion, everything connected with it, the cart, and even the contents of the cart, which

ciaments of all the Inhabitants & others happening growing or arising in the said province & other the premises or any part thereof, or in any voyage or passage to or from the same, as well for Offences committed against Ourself Our Heirs or Successors, or our profit as against others, or things concerning others or the profits of others, & all Manner of Wrecks of Ships or Merchandize, and all that which to Wreck belongeth, by what means soever happening within or upon the Havens, Coats, Creeks or Shoars of the premises or any Part thereof, And We do for us Our Heirs & Successors, create, ordain & constitute the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns the true & absolute Lords and Proprietors of all & every the aforesaid Province of Mayne & premises aforesaid, & all & every the Limits & Coasts thereof, Saving always the Faith & Allegiance of the Supream Dominion due to Us Our Heirs & Successors: And for the better Government of such our Subjects & others as at any time shall happen to dwell or reside within the said Province & Premises or pass to or from the same our Will & Pleasure is that the Religion now professed in the Church of England & Ecclesiastical Governm^t now used in the same shall be forever hereafter Professed, & with as much convenient Speed as may be settled & established in & throughout the said Province & premises & every of them, And We do for us our Heirs & Successors by these presents give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, Power & Authority with the Assent of the greater
part

which added weight to it, were forfeited. Sir Ferdinando then probably regarded his grant of deodands as valuable, since

it was capable of yielding to him a considerable revenue.

part of the Freeholders of the said Province & premises for the time being (when there shall be any) who are to be called thereunto from time to time, when & as often as it shall be requisite, to make, ordain & publish Laws Ordinances & Constitutions reasonable & not repugnant or contrary but agreeable as near as conveniently may be to the Laws of England, for the publick Good of the said province & premises & of the Inhabitants thereof by imposing of Penalties Imprisonments or other Correction, or if the Offence shall require by taking away of Life or Member, The said Laws & Constitutions to extend as well to such as shall be passing unto or returning from the said Province or premises, as unto the Inhabitants or Residents of or within the same and the same to be put in Execution by the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns or by his or their Deputies Lieutenants, Judges Officers or Ministers in that behalf lawfully authorized, & the same Laws, Ordinances and Constitutions or any of them to alter, change revoke or make void, & to make new not repugnant nor contrary but agreeable as near as may be to the Laws of England as the s^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns together with the Freeholders or the greater Part of them for the time being shall from time to time think fit & convenient; And we do further by these Presents for us our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns full power & authority, & that it shall and may be lawful to & for him the s^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns to erect Courts of Justice, as well Ecclesiastical as Civil & Temporal whatsoever, & to appoint & constitute from time to time Judges, Justices, Magistrates & Officers as well
of

of the said Court & Courts of Iustice as otherwise, as well by Sea as by Land, for the hearing & determining of all manner of causes whatsoever within or concerning the said Province & premises or any of them, or the Inhabitants and Residents there, & Passengers to or from the same as well by Land as by Sea, and to order & appoint what matters or things shall be heard determined done or ordered in any of the said Courts, or by any of the said Iudges Magistrates & Officers with such power & in such Form as it shall seem good to the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, And the said Judges Iustices, Magistrates & Officers & every or any of them from time to time to displace & remove when the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns shall think fit, & to place others in their Room & Stead, & that the Inhabitants & Residents within the s^d province & premises & passengers to & from the same may within forty days after Sentence given in the said Courts where Appeals in like Courts within this Kingdom are admitted appeal to the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, or his or their Gen^l Governor or cheif Deputy of the said province and Premises for the time being, To whom we do by these presents for us our Heirs & Successors give full power & Authority to proceed in such Appeals, as in like Cases of Appeals within this Our Realm of England.

And We do further for us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns full power & Authority to pardon remit & release all Offences & Offenders within the said Province & premises ag^t all, every or any of the said Laws Ordinances or Constitutions, & to do all & singular other things unto the
Execution

Execution of Justice appertaining in any Courts of Justice, according to the Form & Manner of Proceedings in such Courts to be used, altho' in these Our Letters patent there be no particular mention of the same; But we do nevertheless hereby signify & declare our Will & pleasure to be that the powers & authority hereby given to the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns for & concerning the Governm^t both Ecclesiastical & Civil within the 1st province & premises shall be subordinate & subject to the power & Reglem^t of the Lords & others Commis^s here for foreign Plantations for the time being, but for all & whatsoever doth, shall or may concern the propriety of the 1st Province, parts & Coasts of the same or any of them, or any Ownership or Interest in any Lands, Tenements or other Hereditaments, Goods or Chattels, or the nominating or appointing of any Officer or Officers, the same is left wholly to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns according to the Tenour, Intent & true Meaning of these presents; And because such Assemblies of Freeholders for making of Laws can not always be so suddenly called as there may be occasion to require the same, We do therefore for us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns full power & Authority that he the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns by him & themselves, or by his or their Deputies, Magistrates or Officers in that behalf lawfully constituted shall or may from time to time make & ordain fit & wholesome Ordinances within the said Province or premises aforesaid to be kept & observed as well for the keeping of the Peace as for the better Governm^t of the people there abiding

ing or passing to or from the same & to publish the same to all to whom it may appertain or concern, which Ordinances we do for us Our Heirs & Successors streightly command to be inviolably observed within the s^d province and premises under the Penalty therein expressed, so as the same Ordinances be reasonable & not repugnant or contrary but as near as may be agreeable to the Laws & Statutes of Our Kingdom of England & so as the same Ordinances do not extend to the binding, charging or taking away of the Right or Interest of any Person or persons in their Lives, Members, Freeholds, Goods or Chattels whatsoever; And because in a Country so far distant & seated amongst so many barbarous Nations the Intrusions or Invasions as well of the barbarous People as of pirates & other Enemies may be justly feared, we do therefore for us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns full power & Authority y^t he the s^d Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, as well by him & themselves as by his and their Deputies Captains or other Officers for the time being shall or lawfully may muster, levy, raise, arm & employ all person & persons whatsoever inhabiting or residing within the said province or premises for the resisting or withstanding of such Enemies or pirates both at Land & at Sea, & such Enemies & Pirates if Occasion shall require to pursue & prosecute out of the Limits of the said Province or premises, & them if it shall so please God to vanquish, apprehend & take, & being taken, either according to the Law of Arms to kill or to keep & preserve them at their pleasures And likewise by force of Arms to recover from any Person or persons all such Territories, Dominions Lands, places,

places, Goods, Chattels & Wares which hereafter shall be taken from the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns, or from his or their Deputies Officers or Servants, or from any the Planters, Inhabitants or Residents of or within the said Province or premises, or from any other Members, Aiders or Assisters of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns, or from any other the Subjects of Us, Our Heirs & Successors, or others in Amity with us Our Heirs & Successors in the said province & premises & Coasts or any of them, or in their passage to or from the same: And We do further for Us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns in Case any Rebellion, sudden Tumult or Meeting shall happen to arise either upon the said Land within the s^d province & premises or any of them, or Coasts of the same, or upon the main Sea in passing thither or returning from thence, or in any such Expedition or Service as afores^d, it shall or may be lawful to & for the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs and Assigns, as well by him & themselves, as by his & their Deputies, Captains or other Officers under his or their Seals in that behalf to be authorized, to whom we also for Us Our Heirs & Successors do give & grant full power and Authority to do & execute the same, to use & execute Martial Law ag^t such Rebels, Traytors Mutiners & Seditious persons in as ample Manner & Form as any Cap^t General in the Wars or as any Lieut^t or Lieutenants of any Country within this Our Realm of England by Virtue of his or their Office or place may or have been accustomed in time of War, Rebellion or Mutiny to do & perform; And we do for us Our Heirs & Successors

Successors further give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, & to all & every Commander, Gov^r Officer, Minister, Person & persons which shall by the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns be thereunto authorized or appointed Leave, License & power to erect raise & build from time to time in the province Territories & Coasts aforesaid, & every or any of them such & so many Forts, Fortresses, Platforms, Castles Cities, Towns & Villages & all Fortifications whatsoever, & the same & every of them to fortify & furnish with Men Ordinances, Powder, Shott, Armour, & all other Weapons, Munition & Habilliments of War both for defence & Offence whatsoever, as to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns & every or any of them shall seem meet & convenient, & likewise to commit from time to time the Governm^t Custody & Defence thereof unto such person & persons as to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns shall seem meet, & to the said several Cities, Burroughs & Towns to grant Letters or Charters of Incorporations with all the Liberties & things belonging to the same & in the said several Cities Burroughs & Towns to constitute such & so many Markets, Marts & Fairs & to grant such meet Tolls, Customs, Duties, priviledges and fredomes to or with the same, as by the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns shall be thought fit.

And for that the Plantations are subject to diverse Difficulties & Discommodities, therefore, We favouring the present beginning of the said plantation, & having a provident Care that those who are greived in one thing may be releived in another, do of our special Grace, certain Knowledge

edge & meer Motion, for us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns & unto all other our Subjects the Dwellers or Inhabitants that shall at any time hereafter be the planters of or in the said province or any of the premises free Licence & Liberty for the landing, bringing in & unlading or otherwise disposing of all the Wares & Merchandizes, profits, & Commodities of the s^d province or any the premises both by Sea & by Land, either by themselves or their Servants, Factors or Assigns, in any of the Ports of us Our Heirs & Successors within Our Kingdoms of England & Ireland, paying only such Customs & Subsidies & Duties as our natural Subjects of this Our Realm of England shall or ought to pay & none other, & to have & enjoy all such Liberties, Freedoms & privileges for or concerning the exporting of the same again, without paym^t of any more Customs or Duties, & for having again of Impost in such manner, & in the like beneficial Sort as any of our natural born Subjects of this Our Realm shall then have & enjoy, And We do also for Us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns full & absolute Power & authority to make erect & appoint within the s^d province & premises such & so many, ports, Havens, Creeks & other places for the Loading & unlading of Ships Barques & other Vessels, & in such & so many Places, & to appoint such Rights Jurisdictions, Privileges & Liberties unto the said ports Havens & Creeks belonging, as to him or them shall seem meet, & that all & singular Ships Hoys, Barques & other Vessels to be laden & unladen in any way of Merchandize shall be laden or unladen at such ports
Havens

Havens & Creeks so by the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns to be made erected & appointed, & not elsewhere within the said province Premises & Coasts, & to appoint what reasonable Tolls shall be paid for the same, & the same Tolls to receive take & enjoy to the behoofe of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns to his & their own use, without Accompt to be therefor made to Us Our Heirs or Successors, any use, Custom, Matter or thing to the contrary thereof notwithstanding, Saving always to all Our Subjects of this Our Kingdom of England liberty of fishing as well in the Sea as in the Creeks of the said province & premises aforesaid, & the priviledge of Salting & drying of their Fish & drying of their Nets upon the Shoar of the said province & any the premises, any thing to the contrary thereof notwithstanding, which said Liberties & priviledges our pleasure is that the said subjects of us our Heirs & Successors shall enjoy without any notable Damage or Injury to be done to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns or the Inhabitants of the said province or in any of the premises or in any of the said ports, Creeks, or Shoars aforesaid, but chiefly in the Woods there growing; And we do further for us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns full Power & authority to divide all or any part of the Territories hereby granted or mentioned to be granted as aforesaid into Provinces, Counties, Cities, Towns, Hundreds & parrishes, or such other Parts or Portions as he or they shall think fit; & in them and every or any of them to appoint & allot out such portions of Land for publick Uses, Ecclesiastical & Temporal of what kind soever & to distrib-

ute grant assign & set over such particular Portions of the said Territories, Counties, Lands & premises unto such our Subjects or the Subjects of any other Province or State then in Amity with us our Heirs or Successors for such Estates & in such manner & formes as to the s^d Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns shall seem meet and Convenient, & the s^d person & persons according to the said Estate & Estates so Assigned & granted to have & enjoy the same, & to make, erect & ordain in & upon the said province & premises, or in & upon any of them or any part or parcell of them so many severall & distinct Mannors as to the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns from time to time shall seem meet, & to the same sev^l Mannors to assign, limit & appoint so much Land distinctly & severally for Demesne Lands of the said severall Mannors, & every of them, as to the s^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns shall & may seem necessary & fit, & the said mannors or any of them to call by such Name & Names as the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns shall please, The said Mannors to be holden of the s^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns by such Services & rent as to him or them shall seem meet, & also that the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns shall & may at their pleasure grant in Freehold so much of the said Demesne Lands, Tenements & Hereditaments belonging or to be belong^g unto any of the said Mannors or any Person or persons their Heirs & Assigns for & under such Rents & Services as to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns shall be thought fit to be holden of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns as of the said Mannors or any of them respectively, the Act of Parliam^t
made

made & enacted in the eighteenth Year of King Edward the first commonly called Quia emptores Terrarum or any other Statute whatsoever, or any other matter or things whatsoever to the contrary thereof in any wise notwithstanding, And that he the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns shall have, hold & keep within the said several Mannors so to be made & erected such & so many Courts, as well Courtleites as Court Barons³⁸⁸ as to our Laws & Statutes of England shall be agreeable; And We do further for Us, Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns for ever all Admiral Rights, Benefits & Jurisdictions & likewise all priviledges & Commodities unto the said Admiral Jurisdictions in any wise belonging or appertaining in & upon the Seas, Rivers & Coasts of or belonging to the said Province & premises, & every or any of them, or to the same adjoining within twenty leagues of the said province or premises or any of them, & in & upon all other the Rivers & Creeks thereof & likewise power to hear & determine all manner of Pleas for & concerning the same Saving always to Us, Our Heirs & Successors & to the Lord high Admiral of England for the time being of Us Our Heirs & Successors all and all manner of Iurisdctions, Rights, Powers, Benefits & Authorities whatsoever incident or belonging to the said Office of high Admiral, which it shall

³⁸⁸ Both the Court Baron and the Court Leet were of remote origin. The former was composed of the free tenants only, while the latter was composed of all the residents within the bounds of the estate or manor. The Court Baron often assembled in the hall of the lord to whom those composing it owed ser-

vice; but the Court Leet was often so large as to make it necessary to convene in the open air. It was usually held twice in the year, within a month after Easter and a month after Michaelmas, and could not "unless by adjournment be held at any time not warranted by ancient usage."

shall and may be lawful from time to time to Us, Our Heirs & Successors, or to the Lord High Admiral of England for the time being to have use and exercise within the said province & premises, & the Seas or Rivers thereof, or within twenty Leagues of the same as afores^d when we shall think fit; And we do further for us, our Heirs and Successors give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns full power and Authority at any time, or times hereafter by him or themselves or by his or their Deputies to administer reasonable Oaths to all Judges Justices, Magistrates & other Officers whatsoever by the s^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns or his or their Deputies to be elected at y^e Election of them to their several Offices or places, or within convenient time after, & also that he the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs and Assigns shall have full power & Authority as well by him & themselves as by his or their Deputies or other cheif Magistrate or Officer by him or them to be in that behalf appointed to give & administer reasonable Oaths to all or any Person or persons of what degree or Quality soever employed, or to be employed in or about the said Province premises & Territories aforesaid or any of them, or in or about the Coasts of the same, & likewise to all or any Inhabitants & others that shall be or remain within the s^d province & premises or any of them, for the true & faithfull Execution & performance of their sev^l Charges & places, as for the Examination & clearing of the truth, & likewise for the Information & better direction of his & their Iudgm^{ts} in any matter or clause whatsoever and concerning the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns, or any Inhabitant, Member or person belonging or repairing
unto

unto the fst province & premises, or any of them, or any part of them, & in all Causes, Actions, Suits & Debates there to be begun & prosecuted as the Nature of the Cause shall require, And further of our more especial Grace, certain Knowledge & mere Motion, We do hereby for us, Our Heirs & Successors grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, that it shall & may be lawful to & for the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns & every of them from time to time to fet to Sea such & so many Ships Pinaces, Barges, Boats & other Vessels as shall be thought fit by the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns, prepared & furnished wth Ordnance, Artillery, Powder, Shott, Victualls, Ammunition or other Weapons or Habiliments of War as well invasive as defensive in warlike manner or otherwise, & with such Number of Men, Women & Children as the fst S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns shall think fit in such Voyage into the fst Islands & places or any part thereof, as well for the plantation & Fortification thereof as otherwise, & that these Presents shall be a sufficient Licence & Warrent for any person or persons that shall be by him or them sent & employed thither to go beyond y^e Seas & in that manner so as the persons so to be shipped, sent or transported as afore^d be not such as are or for the time being shall be prohibited by proclamation of Us, Our Heirs or Successors, or by any Order or Orders of the Lords or other Comm^{rs} for foreign plantations for the time being, And We do further for us our Heirs & Successors further covenant and grant to & with the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns, that only he the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his heires and
assignes,

assignes, & his & their Factors, Agents, & such as shall be employed sent, licenced or allowed by him or them, & no other Person, or persons whatsoever, except as before excepted, shall repair or go into the said province of Mayne & premises aforesaid, & the places within y^e Limits & Coasts thereof, or any of them, to dwell, inhabit or abide there, nor have use & enjoy the Liberty Use & privileges of Trade or Traffick unto in or from the said Province & premises or any of them or buying selling, bartering or exchanging for or with any Wares Goods or Merchandizes there whatsoever; And likewise that it shall & may be lawful to & for the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, & for all & every other person or persons that shall be licensed or allowed by the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns from henceforth & at all times, & from time to time after the date of these our Letters pattents according to the Orders & Constitutions of the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns not being repugnant to Our Proclamations & Orders of the Lords & others our Comm^{rs} as afores^d to take, convey, carry & transport for & towards the plantation of the said province & premises or any of them, or to be used there or in the passage thither or returning from thence, & there to leave, abide and inhabit all such & so many of our loving Subjects, or any other strangers that will become our Subjects & live under our Allegiance as shall willingly transport themselves or be transported thither, & that such our Subjects or Strangers may together with their persons send, carry or convey thither as well Shipping, Armour, Weapons, Ordnance, Ammunition, Powder, Shott and Habiliments of War as Victuals, Canvas, Linnen, Woolen Cloth, Tools, Implements, Furniture,

ture, Swine & Pullen ³⁸⁹ Goods Wares, Merchandizes of all kinds and Sorts whatsoever fit & necessary for the Food, Livelyhood, Habitation, Apparel or Defence of Our Subjects which shall there inhabit & be, & all other, Wares, Merchandizes and Goods whatsoever not prohibited by the Laws or Statutes of this our Kingdom, paying Customs and other Duties as other our Subjects do in such Cases And of Our further royal favour we have granted & by these presents for us Our Heirs & Successors we do grant unto the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns that the aforesaid Province, Rivers & Places hereby before mentioned to be granted or any of y^m shall not be traded in or unto, nor inhabited by any of the Subjects of us our Heirs & Successors without the special Licence of the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, And therefore we do hereby for us our heirs & Successors, further charge & command, prohibit & forbid all the Subjects of us our Heirs and Successors of what degree Quality or Condition soever they be, that none of them directly or indirectly presume to trade or adventure to traffick into or from, nor to inhabit or abide in the s^d province of Mayne, Ilands, Dominions or places hereby mentioned or intended to be granted or any of them, other than the s^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs and Assigns, & his or their Deputies & Factors, unless it be with the licence & consent of the s^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns first had & obtained in that behalf in Writing under his or their hands & Seals under pain of our Indignation, & also of such penalties & punishments as by the Laws & Ordinances

³⁸⁹ Poultry.

nances of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns to be made in that behalf, shall be appointed; And we do further for Us, Our Heirs & Successors grant unto the 1st S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, that all & every the persons being the Subjects of Us Our Heirs & Successors, which shall go or inhabit within the 1st province & premises or any of them, & all & every the Children & Posterity descending of English Scottish or Irish Parents which shall happen to be born within the same or upon the Seas in passing thither or from thence, and from henceforth ought to be & shall be taken & reputed to be of the Allegiance of Us, Our Heirs & Successors, & shall be & so shall be forever hereafter esteemed to be the natural born Subjects of Us, Our Heirs & Successors, & shall be able to plead & be impleaded, & shall have power & be able to take by descent, purchase or otherwise Lands Tenements & Hereditaments & shall have & enjoy all Liberties, Franchises & Immunities of or belonging to any of the natural born Subjects of this our Kingdom of England, & within all or any other of Our Dominions to all Intents & purposes as if they had been abiding & born within this Our Kingdom or any other of Our Dominions; And We do further for us Our Heirs & Successors give full Power & Authority to the 1st S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns or any Person or persons to be thereunto nominated by the 1st S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns to minister & give Oaths of Allegiance and Supremacy according to the Forms now established in this our Realm of England to all & every such person & persons as they shall think fit, that shall at any time or times go
or

or pass into the s^d province & premises or any of them, or shall be resident or abiding there; And Our further Will & pleasure is, & We do by these Presents for us, Our Heirs & Successors covenant, promise & grant to and with the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns, that if he the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his heirs or Assigns shall at any time or times hereafter upon any doubt which he or they shall conceive concerning the Validity and Strength of this our present Grant be desirous to renew the same from Us Our Heirs or Successors with Amendment of such Imperfections & Defects as shall appear fit & necessary to be reformed & amended by Us, Our Heirs & Successors, that then upon the humble petⁿ of the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, such further & better Assurance of all & singular y^e premises hereby granted or mentioned or intended to be granted according to the true Meaning of these Our Letters patents shall from time to time by Us, Our Heirs & Successors be made & granted unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, as by the Attorney Gen^l of us Our Heirs & Successors for the time being & the learned Council of the s^d Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns shall in that behalf be reasonably devised or advised.

And further We do hereby for Us, Our Heirs & Successors charge & command all & singular Admirals, Vice Admirals, Generals, Commanders, Captains, Justices of the peace, Mayors, Sheriffs, Bailiffs, Constables Customers, Comptrollers, Collectors, Waiters, Searchers & all other the Officers & Ministers of us our Heirs & Successors whatsoever as well now as hereafter for the time being, to be
from

from time to time in all things aiding & assisting unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns & to his and their Officers Factors & Agents, & to every or any of them upon Request made, as they tender our Pleasure, & will avoid the contrary at their peril.

And We do Will & further for Us, Our Heirs & Successors do declare & ordain that the s^d province & premises shall be immediately subject to our Crown of England & dependant upon the same for ever.

And further We Will, & by these Presents for us, Our Heirs & Successors do grant to the s^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns that this Our Letters Pattents or the Enrolment of them shall be in all things & to all Intents & purposes firm good & effectual & sufficient in the Law against Us, Our Heirs & Successors, as well in all Courts as elsewhere within our Kingdom of England or in any other Our Kingdoms & Dominions as in the said Province & premises aforesaid or in any of them, & shall be construed reputed & taken as well according to the true meaning & Intent as to the Words of the same most benignly, favourably & beneficially to & for the s^d Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, no Interpretation being made of any Word or Sentence whereby Gods Word, true Christian Religion now taught, professed & maintained, y^e fundamental Laws of this Realm, or Allegiance to us, Our Heirs & Successors may suffer prejudice or diminution any Omission, Misinformation, want of certain Expression of the Contents, Limits & Bounds or the certain Situation of the said Province & Premises aforesaid, hereby meant or mentioned

tioned to be granted, or in what heighth, Latitude or Degrees the same are, or any Defect in these presents or any Law, Statute or other Cause or matter to the contrary notwithstanding; And altho' express mention be not made of the true yearly Value or Certainty of the premises, or any of them, and notwithstanding any misnaming & not certain or particular naming of the said province, places Lands, Territories, Hereditaments & premises whatsoever before by these presents given, granted, confirmed or mentioned & intended to be granted or confirmed or any part thereof, or the misnaming or not naming, or not rightly naming of the degrees & Coasts wherein or whereupon the same or any of them do lye, or any Act of Parliam^t Statute Ordinance, Proclamation or Restraint heretofore made ordeyned or provided, or any other thing cause or matter to the contrary notwithstanding; Nevertheless Our Intent & Meaning is that out of the premises hereby granted or mentioned to be granted there shall be always saved & reserved to all & every such person or persons as have or hath any lawfull Grant or Grants of Land or Plantations, lawfully settled in the division & premises aforesaid the Freeholding & enjoying of his & their Right with the Liberties thereunto appertaining, he and they relinquishing & laying down all his or their Jura Regalia if he or they have any, to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, whom we have hereby made proprietors of the Province or Division and premises aforesaid and paying some small Acknowledgment to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, for that he & they are now to hold their said Land anew of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns.

148 *Charter of the Province of Maine.*

In witness whereof We have caused these our Letters to be made patents, Witness Ourself at Westminster the third day of April, In the fifteenth Year of Our Reign.

Per breve de privato Sigillo

WOLSELEY.³⁹⁰

Examined p J. WILLARD,³⁹¹ *Sec̃ry.*

A true copy as of Record.

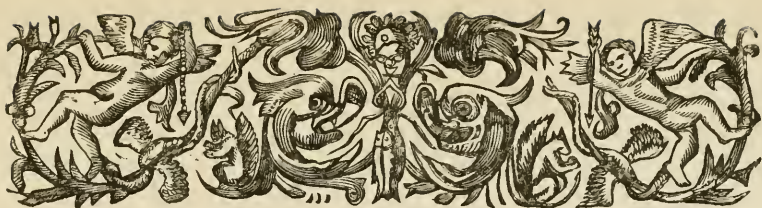
Examined. J. WILLARD *Sec̃ry.*

³⁹⁰ Sir Robert Wolseley. He was clerk of the patents in Chancery, and was created a Baronet November 24th, 1628. He died September 21st, 1646.

³⁹¹ Josiah Willard, son of the Rev. Samuel Willard, pastor of the Old South Church in Boston, was born in 1681, and graduated at Harvard College in

1698. After completing his education, he spent some time in European travel, and upon his return to his native town was made secretary of the Colony of Massachusetts, which position he held at the time of his death in 1756. He was also Judge of Probate and a member of the Council.





THE WILL OF SIR FERDINANDO GORGES,

FROM THE PROBATE COURT AT WELLS, ENGLAND.

LONG ASHTON — TESTAMENTUM DOMINI
FERDINANDONIS GORGES, MILITIS.

In the name of God,

AMEN.

The ffourth day of MAY

in the Yeare of our LORD GOD

one thousand, six hundred, fortie & seven.



SIR FERDINANDO GORGES of LONG ASHTON, *in the* COUNTIE of SOMERSET, KNIGHT, *being sick of body, but of good memory, thanks be given to God, revoking all former wills & testaments, do make this my last will and testament, in manner & form following:*

FIRST. I bequeath my soule into the hands of Almighty God, my Maker & Redeemer, hoping assuredly through the death & passion of my Saviour Jesus Christ to have remission of my finnes & to be made partaker of Life everlasting,

150 *The Will of Sir Ferdinando Gorges.*

ing, And my Body I committ to the earth, from which it came.

Item. I give unto the Poore the some of Twentie Pounds to be distributed att such time & in such manner, as my ex^{ts} herein named shall thinke fitt,

The rest of all my goods, cattles, & chattles, debts & duties owing unto me whatsoever, I do freely give & bequeath unto my dearely beloved wife, DAME ELIZABETH GORGES, whome I do hereby make my sole ex^r of this my last Will & Testament & I do desire my loving friends, John Buckland of West Harptrey & Samuel Gorges of Wraxall in the Countie of Somerset. Esq. to be overseers of this my last Will & Testament, & to be assisting to my said ex^r as she shall have occasion.

In witness whereof to this my last Will & Testament I have hereunto sett my hand & seale, even this fourth day of May, Anno Dom. 1647,

Memorandum, that the word *fourth* in the first line was interlined before the signing & sealing hereof, & was afterwards signed, sealed & published in the presence of S. Gorges,³⁹² Jo. Buckland,³⁹³ Ed Bell,³⁹⁴ William Satchfield.

F. GORGES.

³⁹² Samuel Gorges was the nephew of Sir Ferdinando, being the second son of his brother Sir Edward. He was born in 1604, and married Jane, the daughter of John Cotterell, Esq., of Winford, Somersetshire, and widow of John Allen, Esq., of Irvington. Samuel Gorges was a firm Royalist, and suffered imprisonment therefor under the Protectorate. His property was also seized, and to redeem it he was obliged to pay the sum of five hundred and eighty-two pounds for its release. He was buried

at Wraxall, December 27th, 1671. His wife survived him ten years. His will may be found in the Probate Court of Wells, and bears date October 20th, 1666.

³⁹³ John Buckland was probably connected by marriage with the family of Gorges. Certainly, Sir Robert Gorges and one of this name married sisters. The widow of Sir Ferdinando mentions this same John in her will, as one of her "loving Friends."

³⁹⁴ The Edward Bell here mentioned was



GENEALOGICAL NOTES
ON THE
FAMILY OF GORGES.



HAVE thought, in closing my work upon the life and literary remains of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, that an account of his lineage might be useful. Such a work has not hitherto been attempted, but from the numerous manuscript notes which I possess relative to the family in its various branches, I am enabled to present to the reader a fairly correct account of Sir Ferdinando's ancestors and descendants.

The family of Gorges derived its name from a hamlet near Carentan in lower Normandy, as previously stated. From this hamlet came Ranolph de Gorges in the train of William the Conqueror to the conquest of England. From this time, A.D. 1066, until about the middle of the
thirteenth

was of Gloucester, and son of Edward Bell, Esq., of Writtle, Essex, the father of Sir Ferdinando's first wife, Ann; hence, he was the brother-in-law of Sir

Ferdinando. In his will, dated in 1649, he calls John Gorges, the eldest son of Sir Ferdinando, his nephew, which fully identifies him.

thirteenth century, the family of Gorges was influential; but the few records of these remote times which have come down to us, do not furnish data of a definite character respecting individuals.

7. RALPH DE GORGES. We shall begin then with Ralph de Gorges, the seventh in descent from Ranolph the Norman, who resided at Tamworth in Warwickshire, and for his first wife married a Devonshire lady, Margaret Foliot, of Tamerton Foliot,³⁹⁵ by whom he had a son, Thomas. Upon the decease of his wife Margaret, he contracted in the reign of Henry III. a second marriage with Eleanor de Morville,³⁹⁶ the only daughter and consequently sole heiress of her father, who possessed the manor of Wrokeshale, now known as Wraxall, which he had inherited through an ancestor, who, in the reign of King John, married the heiress of Richard de Wrokeshale. This estate, but a short distance from Bristol, became, as we know, the favorite seat of the family of Gorges for many centuries. Besides Wrokeshale, Ralph de Gorges inherited large estates in Dorsetshire and the Isle of Wight.³⁹⁷ Ralph de Gorges was a renowned warrior,³⁹⁸ and was with Henry III. when the latter was shut up in the city of Bristol by the rebellious citizens. He was in 1264 sheriff of Devonshire, and after a stormy

³⁹⁵ According to *Inquisitiones Post Mortem*, she died in 1239.

³⁹⁶ About A. D. 1250. Collins in his *Baronetage* spells her name Eleanor, and in *Lives of the Princesses of England*, by Mary Anne Everett Green, London, 1855, Vol. II. p. 300, it is spelled Elena. *Vide also The History of the Isle of Wight*, by Richard

Worsley, London, 1781, p. 205 *et seq.*

³⁹⁷ *Calendarium Genealogicum*; State Papers, 1255, 40th of Henry III.

³⁹⁸ Reference is made to him in the *Fædera* of Rymer, the *Testa de Nevil*, and documents relating to Ireland; 37th of Henry III.; Office of the Public Records.

stormy career died in 1271. His widow Eleanor, who assumed the guardianship of the children of Edward I., Eleanor and Joanna,³⁹⁹ survived him twenty years. He left a son by his second wife who also bore the name of Ralph (8).

8. RALPH DE GORGES married Margaret, the daughter of William and Cecilia Caleshall of Sturminster Marshall, in Dorsetshire, sometime before the death of his father, and by his wife became possessed of large estates. Of his career but little is recorded; but of his son Ralph (9), who succeeded him, we have many interesting particulars.

9. RALPH DE GORGES⁴⁰⁰ was born during the life of his grandfather, about A. D. 1266. He married Eleanor de Cave, by whom he added considerably to his estate. He was Marshal of the army of Edward I. in the wars in Gascony, in the year 1293, at which time he was made a prisoner by the French. Six years later he was still fighting in Gascony, and in 1301 held a knight's fee in Branton, Devonshire. At the siege of Carlaverock he was one of the foremost chieftains in the assault, and for his bravery upon that occasion was celebrated in song by the minstrels, who immortalized in verse the heroic deeds of the English warriors who took part in the assault upon the famous fortress.

*" Sir Ralph de Gorges there I saw,
One newly bound to knighthood's law,
Down to the earth was prostrate thrown,
More than once struck by some great stone*

Or

³⁹⁹ *Vide Archæologia*, Vol. XXXIX. p. 389. Also for an interesting letter of the Lady Eleanor, *vide Lives of the Princesses of England*, by Mary Anne Everett Green, London, 1855, Vol. II. p. 300.

VOL. II. — 20

⁴⁰⁰ *Vide Calendarium Genealogicum*; *The Siege of Carlaverock*, translated by Nicholas Harris Nicolas, Esq., London, 1828, pp. 74, 334-337; *Rolls of Parliament*, Vol. II. p. 46; also cf. Vol. III. p. 361.

*Or staggered by the rushing crowd.
Still to recede he was too proud.
Upon his arms and surcoat's fold
Was masically of blue and gold."*

In the year 1303 he received permission to hold a yearly market "on the eve, day, and morrow of the nativity of the Blessed Virgin Mary,⁴⁰¹ and five days following; and a market Thursdays, in his manor of Siditon, Dorset." He also appears to have taken part in a tournament at Stepney in 1308, and the next year was one of the principal persons who attended the tournament in opposition to Gaveston, under the leadership of Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, and Guy, Earl of Warwick. During the same year he was summoned to Parliament at Westminster, "within one month of Easter." This summons, it appears from his writ *de expensis*, dated May 13th, 1309, he observed. On June 20th he was requested to make preparation to join the expedition against the Scots, and July 27th was again summoned to Parliament at Stamford. Three days later he received a summons to the muster at Newcastle-upon-Tyne, on Michaelmas Day,⁴⁰² to perform military service against the Scots; and, October 26th, was summoned by writ to attend a Parliament at York to convene on February 8th, 1310; but the place being changed, he received a second summons to attend at Westminster, orders enough to confuse a nervous man, as Sir Ralph was probably not. On September 8th he was summoned to appear at the muster at Berwick-on-Tweed. As to what he had actually done during the previous year

⁴⁰¹ September 8th.

⁴⁰² September 29th.

year we have no account. In 1310 he was one of the "Supervisors of Array" in the shires of Somerset and Dorset, and also "Leader of the Levies;" his commission being tested at Berwick on May 20th. On August 20th he was again summoned to Parliament at London, and resummoned as Baron to the Parliament held by prorogation at Westminster, November 5th. In 1314 he was again called into service against the Scots, having the year previous sat in Parliament, and was stationed during the next year in the north. In the three following years he was employed in military service. Being known as a friend of the Earl of Lancaster, who had illegally convened a meeting of the "Good Peers" to correct certain abuses of the crown, he was warned by the king to abstain from attending any illegal or treasonable conventions, which he doubtless observed, as his name appears shortly after as a witness to the king's signature. In the following year, 1322, he was summoned to raise as many men-at-arms and foot-soldiers as he could gather, and to hold himself in readiness to march with them to the king's support when summoned; and shortly after he received a summons to appear with his forces at the muster at Coventry, to march against the Earl of Lancaster and his adherents, then in open rebellion against the royal authority. A few weeks later he was summoned to Newcastle-upon-Tyne to oppose the Scots. Being one of the Commissioners of Array in the shires of Somerset and Dorset, he was actively employed in raising men for military service, as appears from the fact that on May 7th he was ordered to "surcease from impressing the services" of the people in the seaports of the two counties. On September 18th

18th he was summoned to Parliament at Ripon, but the place of meeting was afterwards, on November 4th, changed to York. The days were pregnant with events, and within two weeks from this date he was commanded to assemble as many men-at-arms as possible, and to repair to such one of his manors as was nearest York, that he might be ready upon receiving the king's summons to march against the Scots. On December 10th he was commanded to march to York at the head of his men-at-arms, to appear at a muster on Feb. 1st, 1323. This closed an eventful year. He appears frequently in the year 1323, being summoned on April 18th to provide pack-saddles for the use of the army in case it should be deemed expedient to advance without the wagon train. On June 2d he was discharged from attendance at muster, probably owing to poor health. He died Nov. 29th, 1327.⁴⁰³ His widow appears to have married twice after his death; namely, to Guy de Ferrers, and later, to Sir John Peche. Ralph de Gorges left four children; namely, Ralph, who was born in 1307 and died without issue, and three daughters, Eleanor, Elizabeth, and Joan. We shall speak only of Eleanor (10).

10. ELEANOR GORGES married Sir Theobald Russell, who in 1311, at the age of seven, was left an orphan by the death of his father, Sir William Russell, of Kingston Russell, Dorsetshire.⁴⁰⁴ Upon reaching his majority in 1325, Sir Theobald received orders to attend the king at Plymouth, well

⁴⁰³ According to *Inquisitiones Post Mortem* at Carlton Ride.

⁴⁰⁴ At the death of Sir William Russell, the estates left to his son Theobald

well furnished and arrayed for the succor and defence of the Duchy of Guienne. In 1329 he was appointed one of the wardens of the Isle of Wight. There, at the head of the forces which he had gathered to repel the invasion of the French, he was mortally wounded in 1341, and was buried in the church at Gaveland. His wife, Eleanor Gorges, died before him, and left four children; namely, Ralph,⁴⁰⁵ William,⁴⁰⁶ Theobald (11), and Eleanor Russell.⁴⁰⁷ By a second marriage with Eleanor de la Tour, of Berwick, Dorsetshire, Sir Theobald Russell also left an heir from whom the Bedford family of Russell is descended. We however have to deal with

II. THEOBALD RUSSELL, who desiring to perpetuate in his family the honored name of Gorges, decided to assume the name of his mother; hence we will hereafter denominate him

bald were placed by the king, Edward II., in the custody of his favorites. The interests of a minor in property thus held were entirely overlooked, and when his inheritance finally came into the possession of the rightful owner, he usually found his houses in decay and his property of all kinds wasted. During his minority Sir Theobald was reduced to a pitiable condition owing to the manner in which his large estates were mismanaged by those in whose custody they remained, and he was obliged to petition the king and council for support. In this petition, which appears in the Rolls of Parliament, he recited the articles in Magna Charta providing for the maintenance of the king's wards by those to whom the custody of their property had been committed, and he complained that he had received nothing from them or from the king. His petition received a favorable response. Among the estates belong-

ing to Sir Theobald was the manor of Kingston Russell, mention of which frequently appears in the family papers. This estate was under lease at the death of Sir William, and was not therefore at the disposal of the king. According to the terms by which this manor was held, Sir Theobald was required to do homage for the investiture by officiating as the royal cup-bearer at the four principal feasts of the year; instead, however, his homage consisted in placing the chessmen upon the royal chessboard and restoring them to their place upon the completion of the game.

⁴⁰⁵ Sir Ralph Russell died in 1376, leaving heirs. His line was continued by his son Sir Maurice. See pedigree in possession of the author.

⁴⁰⁶ He died in 1342, and his manor of Knighton-Gorges descended to his brother Theobald.

⁴⁰⁷ Eleanor married John Fitz John.

him Sir Theobald Ruffell Gorges. He married Agnes Beauchamp of Watch, Somersetshire. In 1362 he obtained from Edward III. a patent to hold a market at Wraxall every Thursday, and a yearly fair on the eve, day, and morrow of All Saints,⁴⁰⁸ and the five following days. In a charter of the City of Bristol in 1373 he appears as a commissioner, and in 1376 is mentioned in a writ *de expensis* for thirty-nine days' attendance as a Knight of the Shire of Southampton. In 1380 he was High Sheriff of the shires of Somerset and Dorset. He died in 1381, and was buried in the Church of Preaching Friars at Winchester. His will, proved May 9, 1381, is among the Lambeth wills at Lambeth.⁴⁰⁹ Sir Theobald Ruffell Gorges left four children; namely, Ralph,⁴¹⁰ Bartholomew,⁴¹¹ William,⁴¹² and Thomas Gorges (12). Of these we will consider the latter.

12. THOMAS GORGES became by the death of his brother the heir of his father, and married Agnes, the widow of Thomas Norton.⁴¹³ He was a large landed proprietor, and appears to have avoided the stormy path of war which his father and grandfather so persistently pursued, and to have lived upon his estates, enjoying life as he could well afford to enjoy it. He reared a family of four children; namely, John,⁴¹⁴ Theobald (13), Isabella,⁴¹⁵ and William,

⁴⁰⁸ November 1st.

⁴⁰⁹ *Vide* also Ashmolean Manuscripts, Bodleian Library, 1137, p. 144.

⁴¹⁰ Sir Ralph, the eldest son, died in 1381, shortly before his father. *Vide* Inquisitiones Post Mortem, 5th of Richard II., Carlton Ride.

⁴¹¹ Bartholomew, who was Patron of Bridport, Dorsetshire, died in 1396. *Vide* Inquisitiones Post Mortem, 20th of Richard II.

⁴¹² William died without heirs.

⁴¹³ *Vide* Manuscript 7851, British Museum.

⁴¹⁴ John Gorges died in 1414. His wife Florence survived him and contracted a second marriage. She died in 1423. *Vide* Inquisitiones Post Mortem, also Index to Exchequer Records.

⁴¹⁵ Isabella is mentioned in her mother's will as unmarried.

William,⁴¹⁶ and died in the year 1403. His widow survived him sixteen years.⁴¹⁷ We will follow the career of their second son, Theobald (13).

13. SIR THEOBALD GORGES. His brother John having deceased, Theobald became the heir of his father, and about A.D. 1430 succeeded to the Manor of Horfington and North and South Cheriton, Somersetshire, and in 1432 is recorded as Knight of the Shire of Somerset. Sir Theobald in 1437 was in command of forces which marched to the relief of Crobay.⁴¹⁸ He was also at this time governor of the Castle of Rouen, and seems to have been an adherent of the Duke of York, and a pious churchman, but during his later years somewhat impecunious. He died in 1468,⁴¹⁹ and was buried at Wraxall Church, where may be seen this inscription, formerly in the chancel, but now in the north aisle:—

*"Here lyeth Sir Tybbot Gorges
Knyghte and Banneret
of whose soul God have mercy.
Amen, 1468."*

Sir Theobald was twice married; first, to Agnes de Wyke, in the chapel of Court de Wyke, Gatton, Somersetshire, October 15th, 1433, by whom he had three children; namely,

⁴¹⁶ William Gorges is mentioned in his mother's will, but we have no further record of him.

⁴¹⁷ According to *Inquisitiones Post Mortem*, Carlton Ride. A copy of her will is in the possession of the author.

⁴¹⁸ *Vide* Letter of Henry VI. relating

to siege of Crobay, Manuscript 3830; also add Charters, I. 496, and an impression of his seal in the British Museum.

⁴¹⁹ *Vide* *Inquisitiones Post Mortem*, 10th of Edward IV., Carlton Ride, and Strachey Papers, British Museum.

namely, Walter, Elizabeth,⁴²⁰ and Jane;⁴²¹ and, secondly, Joan, the daughter of John Beauchamp, of Lillifdon. By this lady he had a son, Richard Gorges.⁴²² Sir Theobald's eldest son, Walter (14), who died in his father's lifetime, A.D. 1466, we will now consider.

14. WALTER GORGES married Mary Oldhall, only daughter and sole heiress of Sir William Oldhall, a partisan of the Duke of York during the Cade rebellion, and does not appear to have taken an active part in State affairs during his brief career. He left at his death in 1466 one son, Edmund Gorges (15).

15. SIR EDMUND GORGES. Being left a minor, Edmund Gorges was placed in ward to John Lord Howard.⁴²³ We first meet with him after attaining his majority, among the gentlemen, ushers and esquires of the household at the grand wake of Edward IV.; by which it appears that he was attached to that monarch's court.⁴²⁴ From this time he played an important part in court life, and was evidently a popular factor in the pageants and festivals of the period.

⁴²⁰ Elizabeth Gorges married Thomas Grenville.

⁴²¹ She married John Hatch, of Dillon, Devonshire. *Vide the Genealogist*, Part 7, p. 319.

⁴²² To him his father bequeathed Horsington and lands in Sturminster Marshall. He died in 1480. *Vide Inquisitiones Post Mortem*, Richardus Gorges armiger, 20th of Edward IV. A copy of the will of his wife, Matilda, is in the possession of the author.

⁴²³ This appears from Herald's visitations in the reign of Edward IV.

⁴²⁴ He was created K. B. at the cre-

ation of Arthur, Prince of Wales, in 1489. *Vide* Letters and Papers of Richard III. and Henry VII., Vol. I. p. 8, where he is spoken of as taking part in the "grand wache." He is also mentioned as appointed to meet the ambassadors of France on the occasion of their visit to England in 1492, to negotiate a peace, and also to welcome Catherine of Arragon in 1501; and his name appears in the Household Book of Edward Stafford, Duke of Buckingham. *Vide Archæologia*, Vol. XXV. A. D. 1833.

period. Sir Edmund was thrice married; first, to Lady Anne Howard, daughter of John Howard, Duke of Norfolk, who fell at Bosworth Field in 1485, and sister of Thomas, Duke of Norfolk, who won the battle of Flodden Field. She was therefore grand-aunt to Anne Boleyn and Catherine Howard, the queens of Henry VIII. By her he had three sons; namely, Edward (16), William,⁴²⁵ and John,⁴²⁶ and a daughter, Margaret.⁴²⁷ His second wife was Joan Hampton, the youngest daughter of John Hampton, of East Hampton. At the time of her marriage with Sir Edmund she had been already twice married. She died August 20th, 1505, leaving a son Walter, concerning whose life no particulars have come down to us. His third wife was Joanna, daughter of Thomas Coplestone. At this time she was the widow of Sir Morgan Kydwelly, of the Isle of Purbeck. This lady survived Sir Edmund, and consoled herself by a third marriage with Simon Littlecoat, of Orcheston, Wiltshire.⁴²⁸ Sir Edmund Gorges died in 1512, and was buried in the chancel of All Saints Church at Wraxall.⁴²⁹

16. SIR EDWARD GORGES, the eldest son of the preceding, was born in 1483, and resided at the old manor of Wraxall. His name frequently appears in early documents of the sixteenth century, and in several connected with the war

⁴²⁵ He is mentioned among the captains who received ordnance at Southampton in 1513, and at a banquet at Greenwich. Leland in his *Itinerary*, began in 1540, thus alludes to him: "Wrokeshall is three miles from Wyke towards Brightstowe. Here hath Sir Will Gorges a mean old maner place in a valley, and on each side of it on the hills is a fair park."

VOL. II. — 21

⁴²⁶ John's name does not appear in the records of his time.

⁴²⁷ Margaret married Thomas Newton, who died f. p. August 25th, 1525. She was living a widow in 1545.

⁴²⁸ He died in 1524.

⁴²⁹ Sir Edmund reposes under a magnificent altar-tomb where may be seen his effigy and that of his lady. He is represented in full armor, with a chain of

war between England and Scotland in 1513. Henry VIII. at this time was at war with France, and while he was thus engaged the Scotch marched across the border. In this war, which culminated in the battle of Flodden Field in September, Edward Gorges served as a captain. He was also the next year one of the commissioners of peace, at which time he had bestowed upon him the honor of knighthood. After this he occupied various civil positions, and was in 1529 made high sheriff for Somersetshire. From this date until near that of his death, which took place February 11th, 1565, at the age of eighty-two, his name is frequently met with in various records;⁴³⁰ but he seems to have led the peaceful life of a country gentleman of that period. He was buried in the chancel of the church at Wraxall with his ancestors. He married Mary, the daughter of Sir Anthony Poyntz,⁴³¹ and was the father of eight children;

of gold about his neck, and she in a loose robe with long sleeves and a hood thrown back from her face. About the tomb are the coats-of-arms of the family. A copy of his will is in the possession of the author.

⁴³⁰ *Vide* Sheriffs' Roll for Somerset and Dorsetshire; Subsidy Rolls, 14th, 15th, 34th, and 35th of Henry VIII. *History of the Nunneries of Somerset*, by Rev. Thomas Hugo; Registers of the Parish Church of Wraxall; Inquisitiones Post Mortem, and his will, a copy of which is in the possession of the author.

⁴³¹ There is some confusion attending the records of his marriage. According to Herald's visitations and printed pedigrees, he is represented as marrying first, Mary, daughter of Sir John Newton, and secondly, Mary, daughter of Sir

Anthony Poyntz. Referring, however, to the pedigree of Sir John Newton, in the Rawlinson Manuscripts, Bodleian Library, Clafs. 13, No. 66, p. 89, dated 1586, which was compiled during the lifetime of Sir Henry Newton, the son of Sir John, it does not appear that the latter had a daughter Mary, and no marriage of a daughter of Sir John with Sir Edward Gorges is mentioned; besides, Sir John Newton himself married Margaret, a daughter of Sir Anthony Poyntz; was born in 1496 and died in 1568, and was thirteen years the junior of his reputed son-in-law. This, of course, might be possible; but the opinion of the Rev. Frederick Browne, given the author, is that Sir Edward Gorges married only Mary, the daughter of Sir Anthony Poyntz, and sister of Margaret, wife of Sir John Newton.

children; namely, Edmund (17), Sir William,⁴³² Sir Nicholas,⁴³³ William, of Alderton,⁴³⁴ Sir Thomas,⁴³⁵ Jane,⁴³⁶ Elizabeth,⁴³⁷ and Mary.⁴³⁸

17.

⁴³² Sir William Gorges resided at Charlton Manor, and rose to distinction in the British navy. His name appears in the roll of royal pensioners, 1556-1582. He is mentioned in the Lansdowne Manuscripts, British Museum, as Captain under Admiral Winter in 1560. Six years later he was a volunteer in the war between the Hungarians and the Turks. In a letter of September 20th, 1568, from Maximilian II. to the queen, the latter is requested to show favor to the bearer, William Gorges, who has well behaved himself at his court, and during the last expedition against the Turks. He soon returned to England, as we find him granted a license in 1572 to import barrelled fish, and in 1579 was knighted in Ireland by Sir William Drury. The next year he was serving as admiral of the fleet on the Irish coast. On his return to England he captured a noted English pirate named Derwall. He married in March, 1565, Winifred, daughter of Roger Budockthead and Frances Champernoun, aunt of the Gilberts and of Sir Walter Raleigh. His death took place in 1584 in the Tower of London, where he was buried. An interesting letter of his wife, the Lady Winifred, may be seen among the Lansdowne Manuscripts, 109, fol. 187. It is as follows:—

COSIN HICKES,—Though I clame nor know any debt due, yet finding this among many others of greater value, I pray you keep it for a remembrance when occasion shall serve to speak a good word to the Lord Treasurer, who ought to be pricked in conscience to helpe me, considering how many paynfull journeys Mr Gorges served in his chargeable sute & long delays, what toyle bestowed on the Tower which I nor any of mine might enjoy. If I could have

gotten for every thousand but a hundred, it w^d have pleased me, though the recompense had been smalle. I have bene & am very sicke, w^d fayne go to Bathe to get helthe, but my purse is so weake I am not able. I lye in an od corner of my Lady Russell's as much as I shifte to pay hir rente. I spoke to my Lord; he will go to His Majesty—a sutor wanting helthe & money shall get little at the Courte but more griefe. I hope if any w^d remember his Honour, he w^d shewe some pytyfull favour. If you will be the instrument you shall ern onner for a recompense, besides the poor widowes prayers. I doubt not but God will prosper you the better for my hartes commendacions. I bid you farewell.

My lodgings by Russell Houſe this VI of April.

Your cofin & friend,

WINIFRED GORGES.

Endorſed: LORD STAFFORD.

The Lady Russell above mentioned was her sister-in-law. The Lady Winifred's appeal, it is pleasant to record, was not unnoticed; since in the Signet Book in the Public Records Office, under date of April 4th, 1586, appears the following entry: "A gifte to *Ladie Winifred Gorge of such forfeitures as may happen to the value of £300.*" Moreover, as the "w^d fayn go," she evidently went "to Bathe to get helthe," since she died there and was buried at Bath Abbey Church in 1599. *Vide* also Lansdowne Manuscripts, XLIX. fol. 28; *Ibid.*, "Observations on a Seafight," by Sir Wm. Gorges; *Ibid.*, Burghley Papers, British Museum.

⁴³³ Sir Nicholas Gorges married first a daughter of Sir Gyles Poole, and secondly, Mary, daughter of Francis Southwell, of Windham, Norfolk. This lady, whose tomb may be seen in St. Patrick's Church, Dublin, married after the death of

17. EDMUND GORGES. He married in 1531 Ann Walshe, daughter of Sir John Walshe, of Little Sodbury, Gloucestershire,

of Sir Nicholas, Sir Conyers Clifford, and after the latter's death Sir Anthony St. Leger. Sir Nicholas Gorges attained distinction in the navy, and was a member of Parliament in 1585. He died in 1594, and was buried in St. Martin's Church, Ludgate. *Vide* Star Chamber Proceedings, 10th Elizabeth, for interesting proceedings against him; Burghley State Papers, p. 549; a letter from Nicholas Gorges on board the *Swiftsure*, September 27th, 1570; State Papers, Elizabeth, Public Records Office; *The Progresses, Processions, Festivities, and Pageants of Queen Elizabeth*, by John Nichols, London, 1804, Vol. II. p. 145; Records on the Lord Treasurer's Remembrancer's side of the Exchequer, under date of 1570; Correspondence of Robert Dudley, Earl of Leycester, during his Government of the Low Countries: Camden Society, London, 1844, pp. 42, 293, 306.

⁴³⁴ William Gorges, of Alderton, married Cicely, the daughter of Thomas Sparchford, Northants. He died June 2d, 1589, and was buried in Alderton Church under a fine tomb of freestone, which no longer exists; but the slab which formerly covered it may be seen in the floor at the northeast angle of the walls.

⁴³⁵ Sir Thomas Gorges was born at Wraxall, in 1536, and was an important personage at the courts of Elizabeth and James. At the marriage of the Earl of Warwick to the daughter of the Earl of Bedford, in 1565, Thomas Gorges was one of the knights who answered the challengers at the tournament, which formed a part of the wedding festivities of the occasion; and from that time to his death the old records make frequent reference to him. Thus

in 1572 the queen presented him with a New Year's gift, "guilt plate 8 oz;" and the Queen of Scots in a letter to Elizabeth speaks of him as "un de vostre chambre Gorge." In 1586 he was M. P. for Downton, Wilts, and in July, 1603, was knighted at Beddington, Surrey. He married Helena, the Marchioness of Northampton, daughter of Wolfe Snachenberg, who came to England in the train of the Margrave of Baden in 1565. Their daughter Elizabeth married Sir Ferdinando Gorges. He died March 30th, 1610, aged seventy-four. His tomb is one of the grandest in Salisbury Cathedral, and bears upon it, under a magnificent canopy, the effigies of himself and his noted wife Helena. *Vide* Records on the Lord Treasurer's Remembrancer's side of the Exchequer, 1579; *Landdowne Manuscripts*, 50, art. 91, British Museum; State Papers, Domestic, James I., Public Records Office, under date of 1603; Heylyn's *History of the Reformation*, Vol. II. p. 420 *et seq.*; *England as Seen by Foreigners*, by William Brenchley Rye, London, 1865, p. liv.

⁴³⁶ Jane Gorges married John Ayshe, Esq., of Tickenham, Somersetshire, who died September 23d, 1560; and he married, previous to 1566, Sir Robert Stafford. She was buried in Hounslow, Stafford, November 13th, 1591.

⁴³⁷ Elizabeth Gorges married John Wake, of Hartwell and Clevedon, and thus became the ancestress of Wake, archbishop of Canterbury.

⁴³⁸ Mary Gorges married John Morgan, but no record of her remains except that she is mentioned in the will of Edward Gorges, the father of Sir Ferdinando, as his aunt.

tershire, and settled down to the life of a country gentleman, wisely eschewing the vile and cruel Court of Henry VIII., and all part in the affairs of a government which brought so many to the block. Edmund Gorges died March 31st, 1558,⁴³⁹ seven years before the death of his father, and left the following children: Edward (18), Robert,⁴⁴⁰ Henry,⁴⁴¹ John,⁴⁴² Francis,⁴⁴³ Samuel,⁴⁴⁴ Mary,⁴⁴⁵ Alice,⁴⁴⁶ Jane,⁴⁴⁷ Margaret,⁴⁴⁸ and Ann.⁴⁴⁹ We will only speak of

18. EDWARD GORGES. He was born about 1537, and married Cicely,⁴⁵⁰ daughter of William Lygon, of Madresfield,

⁴³⁹ *Vide Inquisitiones Post Mortem* at Wells, August 5th and 6th, 1558.

⁴⁴⁰ Robert Gorges is mentioned in Chancery proceedings in a suit brought against him in 1578 by Henry, Lord Berkeley, and in the funeral certificate of his brother Edward. He was buried at St. Margaret's, Westminster, May 9th, 1583.

⁴⁴¹ Henry Gorges died young, as he is mentioned in the Chancery proceedings of Lord Berkeley, before alluded to, as dead at the time his brother Edward was married.

⁴⁴² John Gorges was buried at St. Margaret's, Westminster, February 5th, 1593. On the registers of the parish appear the names of six of his children.

⁴⁴³ Francis Gorges married Margaret —, who is thus alluded to in the will of Sir Nicholas Gorges, October 28th, 1594: "I give to my neece Gorges, late wife of Mr. Francis Gorges, deceased, a ring worth £3." Francis Gorges was buried at St. Margaret's, Westminster, May 2d, 1590.

⁴⁴⁴ Of Samuel Gorges, the sixth son of Edmund Gorges, we have no account.

⁴⁴⁵ Mary Gorges married James Percival, of Weston-in-Gordano, near Wraxall. She died *s. p.*

⁴⁴⁶ Alice Gorges was married at Wraxall, October 23d, 1569, to Henry Dodington, of Loxton, Somersetshire. She was buried in the parish of Christon, June 6th, 1587. The names of nine of her children are recorded in the registers of Wraxall.

⁴⁴⁷ Jane Gorges was married to Walter Crouch. She is mentioned in the wills of Nicholas Gorges and the Lady Helena, but beyond this we have no account of her.

⁴⁴⁸ Margaret Gorges was married to the Rev. William Jones, and had two children; Matthias, baptized August 29th and buried December 2d, 1579, and Christopher, baptized July 30th, 1581. She died February 17th, 1582. The following inscription may still be read on her tomb: "Here lyeth the bodies of William Jones, B. C. L., one of the Prebendaries of Wells & Rector of Wraxall. Also of Margaret Jones, his wife, dau. of Edmund Gorges, Esq."

⁴⁴⁹ She is mentioned as one of the presenters to the living of Wraxall in 1574.

⁴⁵⁰ She survived her husband and became the wife of John Vivian.

field, Worcestershire. Like his father, Edmund, Edward Gorges took no part in the public affairs of his time; indeed, his brief life hardly afforded scope for the beginning of any marked career, as he died at the age of thirty-one years. His death took place at Clerkenwell, in the suburbs of London, August 29th, 1568, and he was buried there in the parish church of St. James. He left two young children, Edward⁴⁵¹ and Ferdinando Gorges (19), the latter of whom has attained celebrity largely on account of his efforts in establishing colonies in New England; indeed, he has been termed the "Father of American Colonization."

19. SIR FERDINANDO GORGES was the nineteenth in descent from Ranolph the Norman, and, as we have seen, descended from a long line of notable ancestors, whose vigor, courage, and manliness he conspicuously displayed. For military achievements he was knighted in the field before Rouen in 1591 by the Earl of Essex, whom he came so near following to the scaffold. As the particulars of his life have been given elsewhere in this work, they will not bear repeating

⁴⁵¹ Edward Gorges, the eldest son and heir, was baptized at Wraxall, September 5th, 1564, and entered Hart's College, Oxford, in 1582. He married previous to 1590 Dorothy, daughter of Sir John Speke and Dorothy Gilbert. He was high sheriff of Somersetshire in 1608. His children, twelve in number, were as follows: Robert, afterwards Sir Robert; Samuel, born in 1604; Elizabeth, married at Wraxall, January 28th, 1606, to Master Francis Trenchard; Dorothy, married at Wraxall, January 20th, 1603, to Mr. William Carey; Ann, married at Wraxall, September 29th, to Mr. Edward Tynte; Edward,

born 1593, and died in 1594; Edmund, baptized at Wraxall in 1594; Frances, married before 1610 to John Luttrell, Esq.; Isabel, married to John Aishe; Thomas, afterwards the Rev. Thomas, baptized at Wraxall, February 12th, 1602; William, baptized at Wraxall, February 2d, 1605, and in 1635 sent to New England by Sir Ferdinando as his deputy, with full authority for his government of New Somersetshire. He died February 9th, 1658. Lastly, Dorothy, baptized at Wraxall, September 8th, 1608, who married Mr. Donne, of Tutswell, according to the will of her brother Thomas.

peating here. He was married, as has been before stated, four times; first on February 24th, 1589, at St. Margaret's, Westminster, to Ann, daughter of Edward Bell, Esq., of Writtle, Essex, and by her had four children; namely, John (20), Robert, Ellen, and Honoria. The two daughters died young. The Lady Ann died August 26th, 1620, and was buried at St. Sepulchre's, London. His second marriage was to Mary, sister of Sir Francis Fulford, knight, and relict of Thomas Achim, Esq., of Hall, Cornwall, who died in 1619. Lady Mary Gorges died in 1622. Sir Ferdinando married thirdly, on December 6th, 1627, Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Tristram Gorges, and widow, first of Edward Courtney, of Landrake, Cornwall, and second, of William Bligh, Esq., of Botathan, Cornwall. She died at Ladock, Cornwall, where she was married to Sir Ferdinando, March 19th, 1628. Sir Ferdinando married, September 28th, 1629, fourthly, Lady Elizabeth Smythe, daughter of Sir Thomas Gorges, knight, and widow of Sir Hugh Smythe, knight, of Ashton Court, at Wraxall. After his marriage, Sir Ferdinando went to reside at Lower Court, or Ashton Phillips, as it was called, the property of Lady Elizabeth, and there he died. We will now consider briefly his sons, John and Robert Gorges.

We will first speak of Robert, the second son of Sir Ferdinando, who was baptized at Clerkenwell November 15th, 1595, and who, following the example of his father, adopted the profession of a soldier. At the age of twenty-five he was engaged in military duties on the continent, the scene of his father's early experience in war; but upon returning to England, in 1622, was sent by Sir Ferdinando to govern his
Province

Province of Maine. His sojourn in New England was unsatisfactory, and he soon left the country and returned home, where he died not long after his arrival; and leaving no heirs, the Province which had been bestowed upon him by his father passed to his elder brother, John Gorges (20).

20. JOHN GORGES, the eldest son of Sir Ferdinando, was born April 23d, 1593. He was first married July 30th, 1620, to the Lady Frances Fynes, daughter of the Earl of Lincoln;⁴⁵² and second, to Mary, daughter of Sir John Meade, knight, of Wendon-Lofts, Essex. His death took place April 6th, and his wife's death September 15th, 1657. They were both buried at St. Margaret's Church, Westminster. Their children were, Ferdinando (21), born at Wendon-Lofts, August 19th, 1630; Cissilia,⁴⁵³ baptized at St. Margaret's Church, Westminster, February 14th, 1631; Jane, baptized at the same church, July 24th, 1632, and Ann,⁴⁵⁴ born May 2d, 1635. We will speak of Ferdinando, the only son of John Gorges.

21. FERDINANDO GORGES. Having inherited his father's title to the Province of Maine,⁴⁵⁵ Ferdinando Gorges on the eve of the Restoration of Charles II. petitioned to have his rights in the Province, then in possession of Massachusetts,

⁴⁵² *Vide* marriage registers of St. James, Clerkenwell.

⁴⁵³ She was married to Mr. Abraham Chapman, of West Hampnett, Suffex, May 6th, 1652.

⁴⁵⁴ Of Jane we have no further record. Ann died unmarried at the age of twenty years. Her will was dated December 8th, 1655, and eleven days later she was buried at St. Margaret's, Westminster.

⁴⁵⁵ The following is an extract from his will: "To Ferdinando, over and above his marriage portion, all my jewels, books, and wearing apparel & household stuffe; also my Patent of the Province of Maine in New England & all other Patents, writings, & muniments,—together with a cabinet of writings belonging to me, with all my maps & pictures."

chufetts, restored to him. He had already, in order to advance his interests in New England, published under the general title of AMERICA PAINTED TO THE LIFE, two tracts of which he was the author, and a manuscript left by his grandfather, entitled A BRIEF NARRATION. The petition⁴⁵⁶ referred to was considered in Council, and a committee was appointed to investigate the subject, and take testimony respecting it.

After several meetings and long delays, on June 8th, 1664, a report favorable to Ferdinando Gorges was made to the King by Sir Geoffrey Palmer. Upon receiving this report, the King immediately issued a proclamation to the inhabitants of Maine, setting forth the claims of Gorges, and commanding them to deliver to him or his commissioners quiet and peaceable possession of the Province, without delay, or to show reason to the contrary.

Upon receiving this proclamation, Ferdinando Gorges at once employed his brother-in-law, John Archdale,⁴⁵⁷ to bear it to New England, in company with the royal commissioners appointed by the King to establish his royal authority over New England, and who were then ready to sail with two ships of war, the *Guinea* and *Elias*, carrying in the aggregate sixty-six guns. Archdale reached Boston on
July

⁴⁵⁶ This petition may be found in this volume, page 213. A joint petition by Gorges, Mason, and Sterling, but only signed by Mason, had been previously made, and is printed in full in *New England Vindication*, edited with notes by Charles Edward Banks, M.D., published by the Gorges Society, Portland, Me., 1884, pp. 41-46. The origi-

nal is in the Public Records Office. Vol. XIII. No. 79.

⁴⁵⁷ John Archdale subsequently became governor of North Carolina, and by his public spirit and enterprise became a favorite with the people, whose welfare he greatly advanced by promoting the cultivation of rice in the colony. He remained in New England about a year, when he returned home.

July 23d, 1664. The royal commissioners were not welcome in Massachusetts, and their mission proved a failure. Archdale and two of the commissioners, Sir Robert Carr⁴⁵⁸ and Samuel Maverick,⁴⁵⁹ at once proceeded to Piscataqua, and set the machinery in motion to win the inhabitants of Maine to the support of Gorges. There were still many loyalists in Maine, and they joined earnestly with the King's commissioners in their efforts. A government of the Province under the authority of Gorges was organized, and the commissioners addressed a letter to Massachusetts, "requesting In the name of our selves, & the people of the s^d province, you^r courteous & peaceful disceadure from further comand-ing vs & them." This was accompanied by a proclamation commanding "a resignation from all persons vsurping" the government of the Province, and notifying them of the unlawfulness of such proceeding, "Pticularley to ye Governor & Councell of y^e Massachusetts Colonie; protesting against their intermeddling wth y^e government thereof, as they will answer y^e Contrary att his Maiesties indignation." This was met promptly by the Massachusetts government, with the reply that their original charter comprised within its bounds the territory claimed by Gorges, which charter antedated the patent of 1639 to his grandfather, under which he claimed

⁴⁵⁸ Sir Robert Carr was appointed in 1664 one of the royal commissioners to bridle the spirit of liberty in the colonies, which Lord Clarendon affirmed had "already hardened into republics." The commissioners, in command of four frigates and three hundred men, captured New Amsterdam from the Dutch and named it New York, in honor of the Duke of York. The Dutch and Swedes

on Delaware Bay were also brought under subjection to the English power. Their rule in Maine was of short duration. Carr returned to England and died at Bristol, June 1st, 1667.

⁴⁵⁹ For an account of Maverick, *vide A History of East Boston*, by William Sumner, A. M., Boston, 1858, pp. 45, 46, 53 *et passim*.

claimed title. We will not follow the bitter controversy which ensued. Baffled in his attempts to set up the government of Gorges in Maine, Archdale in a few months returned to England.

But Ferdinando Gorges possessed something of the spirit of his grandfather, and was not disposed to yield his claims quietly. Though interested in the extension of British commerce to England's West India possessions, he did not lose sight of his interests in Maine, and he constantly pressed his claims upon the attention of the King, who was too much occupied with troubles near at hand to give much attention to affairs across the Atlantic. In these efforts to recover his New England inheritance he was ably seconded by Robert Mason, who had been dispossessed like himself of territory adjoining the Province of Maine, called the Province of New Hampshire.

After years of fruitless labor, in response to the joint petitions of Gorges and Mason, the King on December 10th, 1674, addressed a letter to the "Corporation of Boston in New England," in which he signified it to be his royal pleasure to appoint commissioners to repair to New England in order to inform themselves of the nature of the differences existing between the rival claimants, and to report thereon. Various schemes to realize something from his New England possessions suggested themselves to Gorges, who was evidently not at all confident that he should be able to establish authority in his Province of Maine. One of these schemes was to dispose of his title for a money consideration to the King, and on February 24th, 1675, he made such a proposition. Not being accepted, he went so far as to offer,

on

on March 20th, in conjunction with Mafon and Lord Sterling, to surrender his title upon having secured to him one third of the net income or profit which should be received from the Province; or if this were too much, such reasonable compensation as the King might think proper. This shows how discouraged he had become through long-continued failure to establish his claims; but a brighter hour was coming for him. The Lords of the Committee of Trade and Plantations directed the Attorney and Solicitor-General to examine his claim, and the result was a report on May 17th, that his title to the Province of Maine was a valid one. This was a great triumph for Gorges and revived his hopes. It was resolved by the Lords of the Committee to do "something effectual for the better regulation" of governmental affairs in New England, and Edward Randolph,⁴⁶⁰ a kinsman of Mafon, was selected as the royal agent, who also acted as the representative of Gorges and Mafon.

Randolph's mission, as we know, was a failure, and he returned home disappointed, and full of bitterness against Massachusetts, who now took an aggressive attitude, and sent able representatives to England to prosecute there her claims to the soil both of Maine and New Hampshire, with private instructions to negotiate with Gorges and Mafon for a purchase of their claims if this could be done for a small sum, so as to settle the troublesome and expensive controversy. Upon the arrival in England of the representatives of Massachusetts, they encountered a hostile sentiment which had been sedulously

⁴⁶⁰ Randolph made himself unpleasantly conspicuous during the government of Sir Edmund Andros and shared

his imprisonment in 1689. After his release he went to the West Indies, where he died.

lously fostered against them by Randolph. The King, too, was privately negotiating for the purchase of the Province of Maine of Gorges, whose title had been declared to be valid, for his illegitimate son, the Duke of Monmouth; ⁴⁶¹ but not suspecting that he had a rival, his movements towards accomplishing his design were slow, and affairs were allowed to drag. At this juncture, John Usher, ⁴⁶² a merchant of Boston, who was acting as the agent of Massachusetts, adroitly opened secret negotiations with Gorges, and for twelve hundred and fifty pounds succeeded in obtaining a transfer to himself of the latter's title to the Province of Maine, and with this title in his possession immediately failed for New England. Thus was extinguished forever the title of the heirs of Sir Ferdinando Gorges to his Province of Maine. Many years afterwards, in 1691, Ferdinando Gorges made one more effort to recover possession of the Province, the title to which he had sold to John Usher, as the agent for Massachusetts, basing his claim upon the fact that the Charter of Massachusetts having been declared void, under *quo warranto* proceedings in England, her title to the Province was also void; but in this he was unsuccessful, and Massachusetts thereafter continued in peaceable possession of the property. Ferdinando Gorges was married on May 22d,

1660,

⁴⁶¹ James, Duke of Monmouth, was born at Rotterdam in 1649, and educated a Roman Catholic. His father bestowed many favors upon him, and appears to have been warmly interested in his welfare; but in spite of this, he headed a rebellion against his royal parent. Failing of success, he retired into Holland, and when his uncle, James II., ascended the throne, he invaded the

kingdom with a force, hoping to secure the throne for himself. He attacked the king's forces at Sedgemoor, where he was defeated and made a prisoner. He was beheaded July 25th, 1685.

⁴⁶² For an extended account of him, *vide The Trelawny Papers*, published by the Maine Historical Society. Portland, 1884, p. 401.

1660, at St. Bride's Church, London, to Mary Archdale, daughter of Thomas Archdale, of Chipping Wycombe, Buckinghamshire. Their children were Mary, born in 1661, who died in 1689, unmarried; Ferdinando (22), born in 1665; Thomas, who died in 1665; Elizabeth, born May 8th, and was buried September 22d, 1669; Cecilia, baptized at St. Margaret's Church, June 22d, 1670, and was married to one Moody, and Ann, baptized at the same church, January 9th, 1671. Ferdinando Gorges died January 25th, 1718, at the age of eighty-nine years,⁴⁶³ and was succeeded by his son, Ferdinando (22).

22. FERDINANDO GORGES married in 1705 Catherine Foyle, of Somerford, Wiltshire. Their children were Richard, born at Ashley, September 18th, 1712, and died February 15th, 1722; Ferdinand, baptized September 28th, 1712, and died in infancy. By the death of Ferdinando Gorges, the great-grandson of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, who was buried at Ashley, February 20th, 1738, the male line of the "Father of New England Colonization" became extinct.

THE

⁴⁶³ The following is the inscription upon his tomb in Ashley church:—

"Near this place lieth the Body of Ferdinando Gorges Esq., late of Westminster, sometime Governor of the Province of Maine in New England.

"He was born at Lol.s in Essex, & was grandson & heir of Sir Ferdinando Gorges of Ashton Philipps, Somt. Bt.

"He married Mary, the eldest daughter of Thomas Archdale, of Loaks in Chipping Wycombe, Esq.

"They were eminent examples of Virtue,

and entirely happy in their mutual affection, & had many children, of whom only two survived their indulgent and tender parents.

"He was charitable and patient, courteous & beneficent, zealous and constant to the church, and a great admirer of Learning.

"He is interred in the same Grave in which Sir Theobald Gorges was buried 1647, 2nd son to the Marchioness of Northampton and Uncle to Richard Lord Gorges.

"Obit. 25. Jan. A.D. 1718, aged 89."

THE LITERARY WORK OF FERDINANDO GORGES.

So much has been written concerning the literary work of the grandson of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, that it is thought best, even at the risk of being charged with performing supererogatory work, to fully examine the Gorges Tracts, so called, consisting of four distinct works, usually bound together, and of which the third is the work of Edward Johnson, which was published anonymously five years before the other three works, which are genuine works of the elder and younger Gorges.

This third tract, the "Wonder Working Providence" of Johnson, has in place of its original titlepage a spurious one, bearing upon it the name of the elder Gorges; which has caused several writers to bring against the younger Gorges the grave charge of fraud. Let us carefully examine the question.

The book is prefaced by a cut of a female Indian, seated, and holding a bow in the right and a portion of a human leg in the left hand, while in the background are several stakes impaling human heads, and a band of savages roasting a captive. On the obverse of this cut is the following:—

"AMERICA.

*'Tis I, in tempting diuers, for to try
By sundry meanes, I obtaine me, caus'de them dye
And, last discouer'd, vndiscouered am:
For men, to treade my Soyle, as yet, are lame."*

Some copies have a somewhat different frontispiece. In this picture a female Indian, similar to the one already described,
is

is fitting under a tree and holding a bow in her left and an arrow in her right hand. At the left of her head is a parrot and scroll with the words, "*Pavit qui genuit*;" while in the background are cannibals; one dismembering a human body, another roasting one of its limbs, and yet another shooting at a deer. Under this picture is the following verse, the word "AMERICA" being above the left shoulder of the female Indian: —

*" Though to my Sisters long unknowne I lay
I am as rich, and greater farr then they.
My barbarous rudenes doth at full exprese
What Nature is, till wee haue Graces drefs,
But when the gloomy shades of Death yet bee
The sunshine of Gods love I hope to see."*

Following the engraving in both instances is a rubricated titlepage as follows:—

America
Painted to the Life.

The True
HISTORY
OF

The Spaniards Proceedings in the Conquests of the INDIANS, and
of their Civil Wars among themselves, from COLUMBUS
his first Discovery, to these later Times.

AS ALSO,

OF THE ORIGINAL UNDERTAKINGS OF THE
ADVANCEMENT OF
Plantations in those parts;

With

With a perfect Relation of our English Discoveries, shewing their Beginning, Progress and Continuance, from the Year 1628 to 1658. Declaring the Forms of their Government, Policies, Religions, Manners, Customs, Military Discipline, Wars with the *Indians*, the Commodities of their Countries, a Description of their Towns and Havens, the Increase of their Trading, with the Names of their Governors and Magistrates.

More especially, an absolute *Narrative* of the North parts of *America*, and of the Discoveries and Plantations of our English in VIRGINIA, NEW ENGLAND, and BERBADOES.

Publisht by FERDINANDO GORGES, Esq.;

A Work now at last exposed for the Publick good, to stir up the Heroick and Active Spirits of these times, to benefit their Countrey, and Eternize their Names by such Honorable Attempts.

For the Readers clearer understanding of the Countrey's, they are lively described in a compleat and exquisite Map.

Ovid, *Auri sacra fames quid non.*

LONDON. Printed for Nath. Brook at the Angel in *Cornhil.* 1659.

Following this is an introduction by Ferdinando, the grandson of Sir Ferdinando Gorges,

“To the Judicious Reader,”

of four unnumbered pages, signed “Ferdinando Gorges,” and then a map of the Western Hemisphere. We now come to

A
DESCRIPTION
OF
NEW ENGLAND

of fifty-one pages, written by Ferdinando Gorges, the grandson, signatures B to H, and on last page the catchword "A:" and then the "Briefe Narration" of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, containing fifty-seven pages, signatures I to P, with no catchword on last page, which bears the word "Finis." The following is the title:—

A
BRIEFE NARRATION
OF THE
Original Undertakings
OF THE
ADVANCEMENT
OF
PLANTATIONS

Into the parts of

AMERICA

Especially Shewing the beginning, progress and continuance of that of
NEW ENGLAND,

Written by the right Worshipfull Sir *Ferdinando Gorges*
Knight and Governour of the Fort and Island of *Plymouth* in DEVON-
SHIRE.

LONDON

Printed by E. *Brudenell*, for *Nath. Brook* at the *Angell* in *Corn-hill*, 1658.

It should be observed that this Brief Narration has no Preface, and that it is followed by another work entitled

AMERICA

AMERICA
Painted to the Life

A

True History of the originall undertakings of the advancement of Plantations into these parts, with a perfect relation of our ENGLISH Discoveries, shewing their beginning, progress, and continuance, from the year, 1628, to 1658, declaring the forms of their Government, Policies, Religions, Manners, Customs, Military Discipline, Warres with the INDIANS, the Commodities of these Countries, a Description of their Townes, and Havens, the increase of their trading with the names of their Governours and Magistrates.

More

Especially an absolute Narrative of the North parts of AMERICA, and of the discoveries and plantations of our *English* in

NEW ENGLAND.

Written by Sir FERDINANDO GORGES Knight
and Governour of the Fort and Island of *Plimouth* in DEVONSHIRE,
one of the first and cheifest promoter of those Plantations.

Publisht since his decease, by his Grand-child *Ferdinando Gorges*
Esquire, who hath much enlarged it and added severall
accurate Descriptions of his owne.

A work now at last exposed for the publick good, to stir up the heroick and
active spirits of these times, to benefit their Country, and Eter-
nize their names by such honourable attempts.

For the Readers clearer understanding of the Country's they are lively
described in a compleat and exquisite Map,
Vivit post funera virtus.

LONDON: Printed by *E. Brudenell*, for *Nathaniel Brook* dwelling at the
Angel in *Corn-hill*, 1658.

After

After this titlepage comes this Preface: —

To the Reader.

I thought it a part of my duty, in this my briefe Narration of our Plantations to remember the Originall Undertaking of those designs in the parts of America, by such Noble Spirits of our Nation that first attempted it, as well for the justification of the right thereof, properly belonging to Kings of our Nation, before any other Prince or State, as also the better to clear the claime made thereunto by the Embassadour of France, in the behalfe of his Master, in the yeare 1624. whereunto I was required to make answer (as more at large it appears in the discourse it selfe, withall to leave to posterity the particular wayes by which it hath beene brought to the height it is to come unto, wherein the providence of our Great GOD is especially to be observed, who by the least and weakest meanes, oftentimes effecteth great and wonderfull things; all which I haue endeavoured to contract in as short a compasse, as the length of the time and the variety of the accidents would give leave, as for the truth thereof, I presume it is so publicly known, as malice it selfe dares not onely question it, though I know none, I thank my God to whom I haue given any just cause maliciously to attempt it unlesse it be for the desire I had to do good to all without wronging of any, as by the course of my life to this present it may appear.

If in the conclusion of my undertaking and expence of my fortunes to advance the honour and happineffe of my Nation, I have settled a portion thereof to those that in nature must succeed me; you may be pleased to remember that the Labourer is worthy of his hire. That I have not exceeded others not better deserving that I go hand and hand with the meanest in this great worke, to whom the charge thereof was committed by royal Authority, That I have opened the way to greater employments and shalbe (as a hand set up in a crosse way) in a desert Country to point all travellers in such like kind, how they may come safe to finish their journeys and leaving an example to others best affected to designs of such like nature to prosecute their intents for further in largement of those begun Plantations,

Plantations, without trenching or intruding upon the rights and labours of others already possessed, of what is justly granted them.

Especially of such, who in some sort may be termed Benefactors as Secondary donors of what (by Gods favour) is had, or to be had from those springs they first found and left to posterity to bath themselves in, but if there be any, otherwise affected, as better delighted to reap what they have not sown, or to possess the fruit another hath laboured for, let such be assured, so great injustice will never want a wofull attendance to follow close at the heeles, if not stayed behind to bring after a more terrible revenge ; But my trust is such, impiety will not be suddenly harboured where the whole work is I hope still continued for the enlargement of the Christian faith, the supplantation of justice, and love of peace, in assurance whereof, I will conclude and tell you (as I have lived long) so I have done what I could, let these that come after me doe for their parts what they may, and I doubt not but the God that governs all, will reward their labours that continue in his service, to whom be Glory for ever, Amen.

FERDINANDO GORGES.

Following this Preface is the

Wonder-working PROVIDENCE

OF

SIONS SAVIOUR.

Being a Relation of the first planting in *New England*, in the
Yeare, 1628.

This is a work of two hundred and thirty-six pages, with signatures B to Hh, and was written by Edward Johnson. The book closes with a second instalment of "America Painted to the Life," under the following title:—

AMERICA

AMERICA

Painted to the Life.

THE

HISTORY

OF THE

Spaniards Proceedings in AMERICA, their Conquests of the
INDIANS, and of their Civil Wars among themselves,

FROM

COLUMBUS his first Discovery, to these later Times.

BY

FERDINANDO GORGES, ESQ;

*Ovid, Auri sacra fames quid non.**London, Printed by T. F, for Nath. Brook at the Angel in Cornhil, 1659.*

This contains fifty-two pages, signatures B to H, and a "General Table" of seventeen pages, with three pages of book advertisements. To sum up, then, the entire book contains as follows:—

"A Description of New England," by Ferdinando Gorges the younger, including cut, titlepage, four pages of introduction, and printed map	58 pages.
"A Briefe Narration," by Sir Ferdinando Gorges . .	58 "
"Wonder-working Providence," including titlepage of "America Painted to the Life," and two pages of Preface, bearing the name of Sir Ferdinando Gorges	239 "
"America Painted to the Life," by Ferdinando Gorges the younger, including titlepage and two pages of Preface, with twenty pages of General Table and Advertisements	72 "
In all	Pages 427

I am particular in describing these books because it seems necessary to point out exactly where the fraud, if such was really intended by the publisher, comes in; and it will be seen that it lies simply in prefacing the "Wonder-working Providence" of an anonymous author, now known to have been Edward Johnson, with a Preface bearing the name of Sir Ferdinando Gorges and the titlepage of "America Painted to the Life." This piece of deception has been charged upon Ferdinando Gorges the younger, who has been denominated a thief, a plagiarist, absurd and mendacious. Though Ferdinando Gorges the younger was not a man of letters, he did not merit this abuse. He prepared in good faith for the printer two tracts upon New England, where he owned a princely domain, between which he placed a tract left by his grandfather. His own work, he honestly states, was drawn "out of the choicest Authors, as Davity, Jean de laet, Anthony Herrera, Oviedo, Francis Ximenes, Champlain, Sparbot, and others." Such an admission would not be made by a plagiarist. These three tracts were probably published together in one book, as they are sometimes found. One who studies them is at first puzzled at finding the date 1659 on the first one and 1658 on the second; but the fact that the signatures are continuous shows that this was a printer's error. He is again puzzled to understand why the second tract ends with the word "Finis" and has no catchword on the last page, and to find that, while the signatures in the first two tracts are continuous, they again begin the alphabet in the third. This, however, is explained by the fact that the third tract was not printed by the person who printed the first two tracts.

We

We will now examine the work bound with these three tracts shortly after their publication. This was entitled

A
HISTORY
OF
NEW ENGLAND.

From the English planting in the Yeere 1628. untill the
Yeere 1652.

and bore the running-title of

Wonder-working Providence *Of* Sions *Saviour*, in New England.

It was an anonymous work, and was published by Nathaniel Brooke in 1654, five years before the date of the first tract of Ferdinando Gorges. A number of copies of this work having been left upon his hands unfold, Brooke conceived the idea of binding them with the works of the two Gorges which were upon the same subject, and which, it is quite probable, after a very limited sale, also became *satis superque* upon his hands. What more natural than that the thrifty publisher should put these various accounts of New England together and try to create a new demand for the more complete work? Had he not prefaced the anonymous work with the title of "America Painted to the Life," which was the title of the Gorges tracts, and with a Preface purporting to have been the work of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, he would not have merited censure; but having done this, he cannot escape condemnation. The original Gorges tracts, three in number, were published in 1659, and were probably bound together as now occasionally found. How long after this
time



Fold-out Placeholder

This fold-out is being digitized, and will be inserted at a future date.

time the publisher, Brooke, added to them the "Wonder-working Providence" we do not know; but, fortunately for the posthumous fame of Ferdinando Gorges, he discovered the fraud, and promptly denounced it in a public manner. This act of Gorges, however, it is but fair to say, was unknown to the critics, since his denunciation of the fraud was hidden away in an old newspaper, "The Mercurius Publicus," bearing the date of September 13th, 1660, and of which but one copy, now in the British Museum, is known to exist. This important evidence of the innocence of Gorges is as follows:—

ADVERTISEMENT.

I FERDINANDO GORGES, the entituled Author of a late Book, called AMERICA PAINTED TO THE LIFE, am injured in that additional Part, called SION'S SAVIOUR IN NEW ENGLAND, (as written by SIR FERDINANDO GORGES;) that being none of his, and formerly printed in another name, the true owner.

This, of course, forever exonerates Ferdinando Gorges from the charge of fraud with which his critics have so cruelly assailed his memory.⁴⁶⁴

SKETCH

⁴⁶⁴ The following interesting letter from the Additional Manuscripts, No. 6789, fol. 123, in the British Museum, relates without doubt to this work, which he desired some of his friends to see before publication, in order that he might have their opinion of it; or, as he quaintly puts it to his friend Heryott, "to bee Gossyps wth you; att thys Baptysme."

you bestow an hower or so in readinge it for y^t tyme wyll largely suffysfe, as to my good frende I recomend y^r paynes, and as to a moste Judytious mynde, I desyre y^e over-lookinge of my oversyghts. S^r lett me entreate you to call M^r Carleton and M^r Warner, to bee Gossyps wth you; att thys Baptysme And excuse my boldnes in thys; because y^u have power to comande me in a farr greater matter, as

Y^r true and lovinge frende

F. GORGES.

M^r Heryott, now that I have doone my best and all to thys discourse I shall praye

It requyers p^rsent favoure for y^t to morrow I mighte carry it wth me to London.—

SKETCH OF THOMAS GORGES.

THOMAS GORGES, Deputy Governor of the Province of Maine, under the Lord Proprietor of the Province, from 1640 to 1643, was the eldest son of Henry and Barbara Gorges,⁴⁶⁵ and was born in 1618. He was bred to the law, and had just finished his legal studies when called by his cousin, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, to represent him in the government of New England. That he was unusually mature for his years we may properly infer, not only from the all too brief notice of him by Winthrop,⁴⁶⁶ but also from his wife administration of affairs while in Maine; an administration characterized by a skill and prudence worthy of age and experience.

Upon his arrival in the country, he waited at once upon Governor Winthrop, and wisely sought his advice; after which, without unnecessary loss of time, he proceeded to the scene of his labors, where he found affairs in a deplorable condition, the inhabitants, mostly fishermen, being too poor to obtain the necessary comforts of life.

The Province was without a government, and the outlook for a satisfactory administration of affairs was anything but

⁴⁶⁵ Henry Gorges was born in 1580. He was the son of Robert Gorges and Winifred Budockhead before mentioned. His wife Barbara was the daughter of Thomas Baynard of Wanstrow, Somersetshire, and Alice Hyde. Their children were as follows: Thomas, the subject of this sketch; John, Governor of Londonderry; Robert, a Doctor of Civil Law; Ferdinando, a captain in the army; Ann, married to Edward,

Duke of Wilsford, Wiltshire; and Elizabeth, who died unmarried in 1668. Henry Gorges died in 1649, and lies buried with his wife in Cheddar Church, the registers of which have unfortunately been lost. A copy of his will is in the possession of the author.

⁴⁶⁶ Vide *The History of New England*, by John Winthrop, Esq., Boston, 1853, Vol. II. p. 11.

but encouraging; yet, with commendable energy, the new governor at once opened a court, and began the task of bringing some order out of the chaos which everywhere prevailed.

A glance at the records of the first court under the new administration, begun June 25th, 1640, gives one an idea of the disorder which prevailed among the people scattered along the coast.

In his dealings with the people of the Province his prudence and equity are conspicuous. Though he was firm, as we know from several cases which are recorded, he avoided acts which might appear arbitrary.

He seems to have had a general supervision of his kinsman's interests in the Province, as we find him, soon after his arrival, in conjunction with Vines, purchasing cattle of John Winter, the agent of Trelawny at Richmond's Island, on account of the Lord Proprietor, and paying for them in a draft upon Moses Goodyear of Plymouth, from whom he had a letter of credit; besides, he was engaged in disposing of titles to land, though this business was not brisk.

While engaged in his onerous duties, affairs were taking place in England, which could not fail to make him uneasy.

A great revolution had for some time been threatening, and its dread rumblings were being constantly blown across the water, increasing the difficulties of his administration, and causing him anxiety for interests at home; hence we find him after three years of faithful toil relinquishing the government of the Province.

Until his return to England in 1643, he resided about a mile above Gorges Point, so-called, and the cellar of his
house

house was pointed out as an object of interest until within a recent period.

Unlike his kinsman, Sir Ferdinando, Thomas Gorges was opposed to royalty, and, espousing the cause of the people in the Civil War, was made, in 1649, Lieutenant-Colonel of Cavalry in the Somerset militia.

Some time after, he is mentioned as a Commissioner of Accounts in Parliamentary proceedings;⁴⁶⁷ and still later as a member of Parliament from Taunton, having as his associate his brother, John Gorges. If credit is to be given to statements of his opponents, he was severe in his treatment of them, as in a "Narrative of the Late Parliament" in 1657, we read that "*Col. Thomas Gorges & his brother, have racked the consciences, flayed off the skins and broken the bones of the poor people, making them swear against themselves.*"⁴⁶⁸ At this time he was Commissioner for the County of Somerset to raise funds, which had been assessed by Parliament for the support of the Spanish war. He appears from letters preserved in the British Museum,⁴⁶⁹ to have been active in Parliamentary affairs in 1658, and did not lose his position with the collapse of the Protectorate, since immediately after the Restoration he was returned to his seat by the influence of the Crown, which shows in what esteem he was held, even by those to whom he had been opposed.

Thomas Gorges was twice married, — first, to Mary, the youngest daughter of Martyn Sandford and Susannah Sydenham

⁴⁶⁷ *Vide* House of Commons Reports, May 23d, 1652.

⁴⁶⁸ *Vide The Harleian Miscellany*, London, 1810, Vol. VI. p. 469.

⁴⁶⁹ *Vide* Lansdowne Manuscripts, Brit-

ish Museum. Letters of Colonel Thomas Gorges, of February 15th, March 1st, 3d, and 22d, 1658; also, Savage's *History of Taunton*.

Sydenham. Their children were: Thomas, born about 1651;⁴⁷⁰ Ferdinando, who died in February, 1683, at York, Maine, where his father had resided forty years before; having come to New England as early as 1674, perhaps in the interest of his kinsman, Ferdinando, the grandson of Sir Ferdinando, and proprietor of the Province of Maine; Henry, who emigrated to Barbadoes;⁴⁷¹ Sufannah, born in 1649, and married to Rawlin Mallack, Esq., of Cockington, the son of her father's second wife. Sufannah died April 17th, and was buried in the Church at Heavitree, on April 20th, 1673.

The second wife of Thomas Gorges was Rose, the daughter of Sir Jerome Alexander, Knight, and widow of Roger Mallack, Esq., of Cockington. They were married at Heavitree, March 23d, 1656, and their children were: Alexander, born July 29th, 1660; Elizabeth, baptized at Heavitree, April 4th, 1662; and Edward, born May 15th, 1666, and buried at Heavitree, June 14th, 1667. He resided at the time of his death, which took place at the age of fifty-two, at Heavitree, near Exeter.

On a monumental stone in Heavitree Church, the following inscription above the Gorges Coat of Arms may still be read:—

“Here lyeth the bodies of Thomas Gorges of Hevitree, Esq. and Rose his wife. He departed this life the 17th of October 1670, and she the 14th of April 1671.

The

⁴⁷⁰ He entered Wadham College, Oxford, in 1668, at the age of seventeen years.

⁴⁷¹ He was living in Barbadoes as a

slaveholding planter in 1668 and several years later. He is mentioned in *Hotten's List of Emigrants to America*, p.

462.

*The loving Turtell, having mist her mate
 Beg'd she might enter, ere they shut the gate —
 Their dust here lies, whose Soules to Heaven are gone,
 and wait, till angels rowle away the stone."*

As so little has heretofore been published respecting Thomas Gorges, who was an interesting figure in the early history of Maine, it is thought best to append to this sketch of the man a copy of his will.

THE WILL OF THOMAS GORGES, ESQ.

SEPTEMBER 25. 1669.

IF I die near Cheddar, to be enterred near my Father & Mother; If by Minehead, near my first & virtuous wife Mary. If near Wraxall, then near my ancestors there interred.

To Samuel Gorges of Wraxall & my dear brother Ferdinando Gorges, all my lands tenements &c. water grist mill in Flax Boniton &c. for five years after my death, in case my son & heir may then accomplish the age of 24 to demand all rents &c.

My eldest son Thomas Gorges hath the Inheritance of a handsome tenement in Devon out of which he is to be paid £25.10 yearly, high rent. — I bequeath to him one great silver tankard with the whirlpool ingraven on it, being the ancient coat of my family.

Money to be raised from the estates in Brooke &c. to bind my son Ferdinando an apprentice & for the carrying on of the trade to which he shall be bound.

To

To my son Alexander & my daughter Elizabeth, £100 each.

To my son Thomas, also, whereas I have a good and indefeasible estate of inheritance in 5000 acres of land, lying on the river Ogarnogg, otherwise Ogungigg in the Province of Maine in New England, granted unto me for considerations, in my Deed thereof bearing date Aug. 4. 1641, under the Seal of the Province therein expressed by Sir Ferdinando Gorges then Lord Provincial of said Province of Maine according to the power and right he had then to the said province and every part thereof, which said deed of Feoffement being now in my custody, was also then enrolled among the Records of said Province — and of which 5000 acres I took peaceable and quiet possession on August 18, 1642. all which lands & cattle thereon, I give unto my son, Thomas Gorges.⁴⁷² Also to him, my farm at Battcumbe, together with the lease I purchased of my brother Robert Gorges, Doctor of Civil Law, known by the name of Great Smead.

To Ferdinando Gorges, a two handled cup of silver with the cover having on it the arms of Gorges & Sanford. Ferdinando has property in Audrey, Somerset, given him by his kinsman & Godfather, John Tint.

To my daughter Sufannah, now wife of Rawlin Mallack of Cockington, Esq, — £700, and all such plate, chains, rings, jewels, & linen that were her mothers, or such as I brought off from Minehead, together with my silver watch, and gilded cabinet, one basin & three dishes of china — the works that I now have of Bishop Hall's and all those I have of Baxter's — the

⁴⁷² This deed for five thousand acres found in York Deeds, Portland, 1887, of land on the Ogunquit River may be Book I. Part II. fol. 5, 6, and 7.

192 *Genealogical Notes on Gorges Family.*

— the two books known by the name of “ St. Giles, Criplegate Morning Exercifes.” All which, I hope ſhe will read & labor to underſtand & practice accordingly.

Rawlin Mallack & Ferdinando Gorges my brother, to be Truſtees of my manors of Over and Nether Trewynt in the pariſh of Poundſtock, Cornwall for the uſe of my children Alexander and Elizabeth.

20/ for a ring to Martin Greenwood & Ann his wife, to my brothers & ſiſters, to my brothers-in-law and ſiſters-in-law.

THOMAS GORGES

Fiſt Adm'n papers to Roſe Gorges, relict, Second after Roſe Gorges' death to Ferdinando Gorges, for the uſe & during the abſence in parts beyond the ſeas, of Henry & Ferdinando Gorges, ſons of the teſtator.

DOCUMENTS

RELATING TO

THE PROCEEDINGS

TAKEN BY

FERDINANDO GORGES, Esq.,

FOR THE RECOVERY OF

THE PROVINCE OF MAINE.

NOTE. — These Documents are verbatim copies of those in the Office of the Public Records, and in the British Museum, London. Other Documents relating to the same subject, gathered from the Massachusetts Archives, may be found in the *Documentary History of Maine*, Vol. IV., published by the Maine Historical Society and edited by the author of this work.



DOCUMENTS

RELATING TO

THE PROVINCE OF MAINE.

PETITION OF FERDINANDO GORGES, ESQ., TO THE KING.



O the Kinges most Excellent Ma^{tie}.

The humble Petiçon of Ferdinando Gorges Esq^r sonne & heire of John Gorges Esq deceased who was sonne & heire of S^r Ferdinando Gorges Kn^t deceased.

Most humbly sheweth:

That the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges yo^r Petiçoners Grand father being divers yeares Since chiefly instrumentall in discovering & reduceing of New England in America to the obedience & Governem^t of the lawes of this kingdome and haveing spent many yeares time & vast Sumes of money therein whereby he exhausted the greatest part of his fortune, and the same being thereby brought to some perfection & hopes of advantage Yo^r Ma^{ties} late Royall father of ever blessed memory in the XVth yeare of his raigne was graciously pleased to graunt unto the Said S^r Ferdinando Gorges
yo^r

yo^r Petiçoners said Grandfather his heires & Assignes for ever a Patent of a considerable part thereof called the Province of Mayne the same conteyning every way 120 miles wth very many large Privileges & Immunities As in & by the said Patent under the greate Seale ready to be produced it doth & may at large appeare, Long before & since w^{ch} said Graunt yo^r Petiçoners Grandfather at his very greate charges hath sent over severall persons as his Deputies to Governe the said place.

That certaine English Inhabitants in New-England called the Mathethewfits takeing Advantage of the late Rebellion here (dureing w^{ch} time yo^r Petiçoner durst not assert his right to the said premisses) have without Any colour of right encroacht upon all or upon the greatest part of the said premisses discended unto yo^r Petiçoner from his Grandfather as aforesaid And that Severall other persons who in trueth at most were but Tenants under some yearely rent & other services unto some small & inconsiderable part of the said premisses under yo^r Petiçoners Grandfather doe now clayme the same as Lords & Proprieto^{rs} thereof whereby yo^r Petiçoners Grandfathers vast expences aforesaid are like to be utterly lost and his Patent (w^{ch} was the greatest Patrimony that yo^r petiçoners Grandfather left him) wilbe rendered unprofitable to him without yo^r Ma^{ts} most graçous help & assistance.

Yo^r Petiçoner therefore humbly prayes yo^r Ma^{tie} to take this matter into yo^r most graçous consideraçon the same being of very greate concernem^t unto this yo^r Kingdome of England or els That yo^r Ma^{tie} would be pleased to referre the consideraçon thereof to yo^r
Counsell

Counsell for forraigne Plantaçons to examine the whole matter & yo^r Petiçoners title thereunto and to certifie yo^r Ma^{tie} the trueth of the premisses.

And yo^r Petiçoner as in duetie bound shall ever pray fo^r yo^r Ma^{ts} long and prosperous raigne.

At the Court at White hall the 4th of Aprill 1661. His Ma^{tie} is graçouſly pleaſed to referre this petiçon to the Councell for forreigne Plantaçons who upon due confideraçon and examinaçon had of the Pe^{trs} title to the premisses and what is by him alleadged are to certifie his Ma^{tie} how they finde the Pet^{rs} Cafe to ſtand together wth their opinions what is fitt to be done thereupon for his juſt reliefe. And then his Ma^{tie} will declare his further pleaſure.

(Colonial Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. XIV. No. 59.)

COMMISSION TO EDWARD HYDE, LORD CHANCELLOR,⁴⁷³ ETC.

THE Copie of His Ma^{ts}: Commiſſion for a Councill for Forraigne Plantations / ⁴⁷⁴

I. Inſtruçcons for the Councill appointed for Forraigne Plantations /

Orders and proceedings of ditto.

M^r

⁴⁷³ Edward Hyde, Earl of Clarendon, the author of the *History of the Great Rebellion*. He was an eminent jurist, and unjustly accused of high treason, for which he was obliged to go

into exile. He was born February 18th, 1608, and died at Rouen, December 9th, 1674.

⁴⁷⁴ A commission was issued from Westminster, December 1st, 1660, to Edward

M^r Ferdinando Gorges petition (formerly referred to this Counsell by his Ma^{tie} being this day read It is ordered that my Lord of Marleborough,⁴⁷⁵ my Lord of Portland,⁴⁷⁶ my Lord D'Acre,⁴⁷⁷ my Lord Berkeley,⁴⁷⁸ M^r Boyle,⁴⁷⁹ M^r Willoughbie,

Edward Hyde, Lord Chancellor; Thomas, Earl of Southampton, Lord Treasurer; Edward, Earl of Manchester, Lord Chamberlain; Theophilus, Earl of Lincoln; John, Earl of Clare; James, Earl of Marlborough; Jerome, Earl of Portland; William, Viscount Say and Sele, and others, as the king judged it necessary, that so many remote colonies and governments, "so many ways considerable to our crown, should be brought under an uniform inspection and conduct for their future regulation, security, and improvement." This Council for Foreign Plantations consisted of thirty-five persons, taken from the nobility, gentry, and merchants; and authority was granted "to any five to take into their consideration the condition of the foreign plantations, according to instructions annexed." These instructions were, "To inform themselves of the state of the plantations, and by what commissions they are governed, copies of which, and of all grants, are to be registered in a book to be provided for that purpose." A correspondence was also to be opened with the various Governors, and measures were to be adopted to render "those dominions and England mutually helpful, to bring them into a more uniform government, and order the better distribution of justice." In fact, this Council was to regulate and encourage navigation and emigration; "to provide learned and orthodox ministers for the plantations;" to consider missionary work among the natives; and "to dispose of all matters relating to the good government, improvement, and management of the plantations."

This document contains the names of but fifteen of the Council. *Vide* Domestic Correspondence, Charles II., Public Records Office, Vol. XIV., under date of June 19th, and December 1st, 1660.

⁴⁷⁵ Sir James Ley, the third Earl of Marlborough, was eminent for learning, as well as a distinguished naval commander. He was Lord Admiral of the fleet at Dartmouth, and served in the West Indies in 1662. He was slain in a naval engagement with the Dutch, June 23d, 1665, while in command of the "Old James," a war ship at that time considered a marvel for size and strength.

⁴⁷⁶ Jerome Weston, second Earl of Portland, succeeded his father, Richard, the first Earl, as Captain and Governor of the Isle of Wight. Being supposed loyal to the King, he was displaced from official position by Parliament, and suffered many indignities; but lived to see the King restored, dying shortly after that event, May 16th, 1662.

⁴⁷⁷ Francis, fourteenth Lord Dacre. He supported the Protectorate; but at the last, favored the restoration of the Stuarts, and so came into favor with royalty. He died in 1662.

⁴⁷⁸ George, fourteenth Lord Berkeley, created Baron Mowbray and Earl of Berkeley, September 11th, 1679. He died October 14th, 1698.

⁴⁷⁹ Robert Boyle was the seventh son and fourteenth child of Richard Boyle, Earl of Cork, who was so noted in his day. He was born January 25th, 1627, and soon achieved a reputation for literary and scientific attainments, especially for his invention of the air-pump.

He

loughbie,⁴⁸⁰ S^r Peter Leere,⁴⁸¹ S^r John Mennes,⁴⁸² S^r John Colliton,⁴⁸³ Coll. Venables,⁴⁸⁴ M^r Pym,⁴⁸⁵ M^r Povey,⁴⁸⁶ M^r Glascock,⁴⁸⁷ M^r Kendall⁴⁸⁸ and Coff Middleton,⁴⁸⁹ or any three
of

He was also interested in religious affairs, and was made by order of the Council at Whitehall, February 7th, 1662, Governor of the Company for Propagating the Gospel in New England and parts adjacent in America. His life was an active one, as may be seen from his literary remains, which have been published in five volumes. He died December 30th, 1691.

⁴⁸⁰ Sir Francis, fourth Lord Wiltoughby of Parham, was a man noted for activity and enterprise, as well as for his loyalty to the Crown. For his distinguished services to the exiled Charles he was sent, soon after the Restoration, as Royal Governor to the West Indies, where he was granted large colonial possessions. His career in this new field of activity, however, was brief, as he lost his life by drowning, at Barbadoes, in 1666.

⁴⁸¹ Sir Peter Leere, though one of the Council for Foreign Plantations, did not sufficiently distinguish himself to leave important memorials behind; nor is it clear how he obtained his title, since his name is not borne on any of the published rolls of knighthood.

⁴⁸² Sir John Mennes, born at Sandwich in 1598, and knighted at Dover in 1641, was Vice-Admiral of the Royal Navy and Governor of Dover Castle. He was the author of *Musarum Delicia*, published in 1656, and of other works. He died in 1671.

⁴⁸³ Sir John Colleton was a captain of foot in the Civil War, and during the Protectorate was obliged to live in exile. Having received a commission to raise a regiment for the King's service, he expended £40,000 in gathering and equipping it, by which liberality,

and the loss of property by sequestration, he was nearly impoverished. After the Restoration, Charles II. made him some amends for his losses by granting him possessions in America with Albe-Marle. He was created a Baronet, February 18th, 1660, and died at the age of fifty-eight, in 1666.

⁴⁸⁴ Colonel Robert Venables was an officer in Cromwell's army, and served as chief in command of the forces in Ulster in 1649. He was a friend of Izaak Walton, and author of the third part of the *Universal Angler*, published in 1668.

⁴⁸⁵ Charles Pym, Esq., of Brymore, as his title indicates, belonged to the legal profession, and was a firm loyalist. For his distinguished ability and services to the Crown, he was knighted at Whitehall by the King, February 14th, 1662.

⁴⁸⁶ Thomas Povey had held office under the Protectorate, and was a member of Parliament at this time. He was prominent in affairs after the Restoration. Among the offices held by him was that of Treasurer to the Board of Commissioners for the affairs of Tangier, and Surveyor-General of the Victualling Department. His letter-books, which are of great historic value, have been preserved, and are in the British Museum.

⁴⁸⁷ William Glascock, of Wormley, who is here mentioned as one of the Council for Foreign Plantations, was one of the Masters in Chancery during the reign of Charles II. For his learning and ability he won the title of LL.D., and became Sir William Glascock on the 12th of May, 1661.

⁴⁸⁸ Thomas Kendall was a noted merchant

of them be appointed a Coñmittee to confider of the fame and of the feverall Patents concerning the Province of Mayne in New-England and to receive all examinaçons & testimonies concerning the feverall rights thereunto belonging and report the fame together with their opinions to this Counfell on Monday next. The faid Coñmittee in the meane time to meete (for the purpofe aforefaid) at the Inner Court of Wards on Friday next at nyne of the clock in the morning and to adjourne as they fhall fee caufe.

Eodem die.

This Counfill adjourne till this day fevenight at three of the clock in the afternoone in the Inner Court of Wards.

Veneris xvii^o die Maij.

M^r Pym, S^r John Colliton and M^r Kendall (who wth many others were by order of this Counfell made on Monday laft appointed a Comittee to confider of M^r Gorges Peticon) this day meeting according to the faid order and not haveing time fufficient adjourned untill Monday next at two of the clock in the afternoone in the Inner Court of Wards.

Lunæ xx^o die Maij Anno xiiij^o Re Caroli fecūdi:

M^r BOYLE.

M^r PYM.

M^r POVEY.

COLL MIDDLETON.

M^r HOW.⁴⁹⁰

M^r DIGGES.⁴⁹¹

M^r IEFFERIES.⁴⁹²

. The

merchant of his time, and one of the early adventurers to the West Indies, where he held the office of Governor at an early date.

⁴⁸⁹ John Middleton was a General in the Parliamentary army, but changed

his coat and took part on the royal fide at the battle of Worcester. For this service to his caufe, Charles II. created him Earl of Middleton. He died while filling the office of Governor of Tangier, in 1673.

The Committee for that purpose appointed referred their further proceeding upon M^r Gorges Petiçon till Monday next at two of the clock in the after noone in the Inner Court of Wards.

.
(The Journal of Council for Plantations, Public Records Office), 1660-1664.

(Colonial Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. XVIII. No. 70.)

COPY OF S^r GEOFFRY PALMER'S⁴⁹³ REPORT TO HIS MA^{ties}
ABOUT M^r GORGES AFFAIRE.

MAY IT PLEASE YOUR MOST EXCELLENT MA^{ties} / In obedience to your Royall Command, by the Reference upon the Petition annexed, I have considered thereof, and doe find that S^r Ferdinando Gorges Grandfather to the Petitioner in the 15th yeare of your Ma^{ties} Royall father, obtained a Graunt to him and his Heires, under the great Seale of England, of a certaine part of New England in America,

⁴⁹⁰ Alexander Howe was a merchant of wealth and influence, interested in western commerce and colonization, for which reason he was doubtless selected as a member of this important Council. No memorials of him have been preserved.

⁴⁹¹ Edward Digges was a son of Sir Dudley Digges, a man noted in the reign of Charles I., and Master of the Rolls in 1630. He was a member of the Governor's Council in Virginia in 1654, and engaged at Denbigh, on the James River, in silk culture. At the departure of Governor Bennett from Virginia, the next year, he became his

VOL. II. — 26

successor. He returned to England in 1656, where he for some time represented the interests of the Colony. He died March 15th, 1675.

⁴⁹² John Jefferies was one of an influential coterie of merchants to which Howe and Kendall belonged, engaged in foreign commerce, and who exercised no inconsiderable power at this period, both at home and abroad, as references to them abundantly show; yet one seeks in vain for particulars concerning them.

⁴⁹³ Geoffrey Palmer was Attorney-General and Chief Justice of Chester, and was created a Baronet, June 7th, 1660. He died in 1670.

America, called by the Name of the Province of Mayne, to be held as of the Mannour of East Greenwich, under certaine Rents and Conditions in the Letters Pattents expressed, And it appeares by severall Affidavits and Certificates of credible persons hereunto annexed, that the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges had the possession of the said Province without any disturbance and did governe the same according to the direction of the said Letters Pattents for some yeares, Expended about twenty thousand pounds in the Plantation thereof, that when he had made such a Progresse in y^e said Plantation, as that he expected to reape some Profit and advantage thereby, the unhappy Warres breaking out in England S^r Ferdinando Gorges was in actuall service in the said Warres for your Royall father, by reason whereof he was a great sufferer, plundred and imprisoned severall times, and thereby disabled from any further Expende, in carrying on the said Plantation, the rather for that he was so discouraged and discountenanced by the then pretended Comm^{rs} for forreigne Plantations, that his Commiff^{rs} were forced to come from the said Plantation, and so lost the possession, And the inhabitants thereof Petitioned the Governours of the Matachuset or Bay of Boston, to take them under their Government, which accordingly they did, and haue continued under their Gouvernement ever since, And the Petitioners Commiff^{rs}, since your Ma^{ties} Restoration, haue endeavoured to take possession of the said Province, for the Petitioner being Heire to his Grandfather, and proclaimed your Ma^{tie}, began to hold Courts as formerly, and to administer the Oath of Allegiance and Supremacy, but were disturbed and hindred therein, by the said Governours of
the

the Matachufet, and Bay of Boston, who required the Com-
miss^{rs} to proceed no further on the behalfe of the Petitioner,
untill they had Order from the Supreame Authority of
England, and untill which time, they commanded the
Inhabitants of that Province to continue under their
Governement. All which I humbly certify &c.

G. PALMER.

8 June 1664.

Compared with a true Coppy that was Examined by Michael Brighthouse. End :
Coppy of S^r Geoffry Palmers Report.

(Colonial Papers, Vol. XVIII. No. 72.)

THE KING TO THE INHABITANTS OF THE PROVINCE OF
MAINE.

CHARLES R^e

To the Inhabit^{ts} of Mayne
concening M^r Gorges title.

TRUSTY AND WELBELOVED Wee greet you well. Whereas
our Trusty and Welbeloved Ferdinando Gorges Esq^r hath
by his humble Petiçon informed Vs that his Grandfather
Sir Ferdinando Gorges Kn^t deceased being a person who
laid himself forth very much for the advancing of foraine
Plantaçons, and particularly that of New England in
America, did in the fifteenth year of the Reigne of Our
late Royall Father of blessed memory obtain a Grant under
the great Seale of England for a certain part and portion of
the said Country which by the said Patent was entituled the
Province of Meyne, and (as the Petiçon^r affirms he hath
heard from severall persons of worth) he the said Sir Fer-
dinando

dinando Gorges, did expend in Planting severall parts of New England above Twenty Thousand pounds Ster; and when he was in hopes to receiue some advantage in recompence of his great disbursements afore mençoned, the late unhappy Wars breaking out in England, he the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges (though betwixt three & four score years of age) did personally engage in Our Royall Father's service, and particularly in the Siege of Bristoll; by reason whereof when it was necessary for him to appear before the Councill & Committees for foraine Plantaçons, he was wholly discountenanced by them, even to the encouraging of the people in the said Province to disown his government, which had continued for severall years uninterrupted, and a party of the Inhabitants of the said Province petitioning the Gouvernor of the Mafachusets Bay, That they would also take upon them the Gouvernement of the said Province; In Pursuance of that Petiçon those who had the Gouvernement of the said Bay did from thence forth take upon them the Government of the said Province; So as both the said Sir Ferdinando the Petiçoners Father and himself haue ever since been thereby deprived of the issues and profits of the said Province, Now in regard of the Premisses and forasmuch as those Agents who were lately employed to addresse themselves unto Vs on the behalfe of the Gouvernors and Inhabitants of the said Bay being on the behalfe of the Petiçoner charged before. Our Privy Councill for usurping the government of the said Province did declare, that those whom they represented did not claime any title to or interest in the said Province but did onely governe the same, untill Orders from hence were sent over for the government thereof

thereof on the behalf of the Petitioner upon whose humble supplications, Wee were graciously pleased to referre the Allegations aboue said to the consideration and examination of Our Councell learned in the Law, who haue made report unto Vs, that they have considered thereof and do find that Sir Ferdinando Gorges aforementioned in the fifteenth year of the Reigne of Our Royall Father obtained a Grant to him and his Heirs under the great Seale of England of a part of New England in America, called by the name of the Province of Meyne, to be held as of the Mannor of East Greenwich, under certain Rents and conditions in the Letters Pt̃nts expressed, And that it appeared by severall Affidavits & Certificates of credible persons that the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges had the possession of the said Province without any disturbance, and did govern the same, according to the directions of the said L^{res} Pt̃nts, for some years, expended aboue Twenty Thousand pounds in the Plantacon thereof That when he had made Such progresse in the said Plantacon as that he expected to reap some profit and advantage thereby, the unhappy Wars breaking out in England; Sir Ferdinando Gorges was in actuall service in the said Wars for Our Royall Father, by reason whereof he was a great Sufferer, plundred and imprisoned severall times, and thereby disabled from any further expences in carrying on the said Plantacon; the rather for that he was so discouraged and discountenanced by the then pretended Commissioners for foraine Plantacons as that his Commissioners were forced to come from the said Plantacon, and so lost the possession; and the Inhabitants thereof petitioned the Gouvernors of the Masachufets or Bay of Boston to take them

them under their Government which accordingly they did and haue continued under their government ever since, And the Petiçoners Comiſſioners ſince Our Reſtoration haue endeauoured to take poſſeſſion of the ſaid Province for the Petiçoner (being Heir to his Grandfather) and Proclamed Vs, began to hold Courts as formerly, to adminiſter the Oaths of Allegiance and Supremacy, but were diſturbed and hindred therein by the ſaid Governors of the Maſachuſets or the Bay of Boſton: who required the Comiſſioners to proceed no further on the behalf of the Petiçoner untill they had Order from the Supreme Authority of England, untill which time they comãded the Inhabitants of that Province to continue under their Government; Wee haue taken the whole matter into oʳ Princely conſideraçon; and finding the Petiçoners Allegaçons and Report of Our ſaid Councill learned ſo conſonant, Wee haue thought fit to ſignify Our pleaſure on the behalfe of the ſaid Ferdinando Gorges the Petiçoner, hereby Requiring you that you forthwith make Reſtituçon of the ſaid Province unto him or his Comiſſioners, and deliver him or them the quiet & peaceable Poſſeſſion thereof, *otherwise that without delay you ſhow Vs reaſon to the contrary.* And ſo Wee bid you farewell. Given at Our Court at Whitehall the 11th day of Iune 1664 in the Sixteenth year of Our Reigne.

By his Ma^{ties} comãd /

WILL: MORICE.⁴⁹⁴

To

⁴⁹⁴ Sir William Morice was born at Exeter, November 6th, 1602, and in 1645 was choſen knight of the ſhire for Devon, to ſerue in the Long Parliament. By the influence of General Monk, his kinfman, he was made Secretary of

State by Charles II., in February, 1659, and in 1660, upon the King's landing in England, received the honor of knighthood. In 1661 he was M. P. for Plymouth. He died December 12th, 1676.

To Our Trusty & Welbeloued the Inhabitants of the Province of Meyne in New England or whom else it may concerne.

This is a true Copy, examined by Jo: COOKE.

End: 11 June 1664. New England. Letter of his Matie restoring possession.

(Colonial Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. XIX. No. 2.)

ANSWER OF THE GENERAL COURT OF THE MASSACHUSETTS
TO A PETITION BY FERDINANDO GORGES, 1665.

AN Anfwer by letter from the General Court of y^e Mafachufets Colony in New England, upon their Receipt of y^e Copie of a Petition of Ferdinando Gorges, and feveral others of the Province of Mayne & Laconia, to the Petition complaining of them for feizing their Lands, & fubverting their antient Government, They refusing to take the Engagem^t to bee true to y^e Common Wealth wthout King & Houfe of Lords. Whereas they the Petitioners, had in obedience to A^cts of Parliam^t one thousand fix hundred forty-eight, as they call them, taken it, and advifed the Honorable State of it. &c^a

At our firft coming hither into this Wildernefs, and for fome years after, multitude of occafions, in the begining of foe great an undertaking, did hinder our exact taking notice of, or laying claime to the utmoft extent of our Limits, efpecially to the Northward; nor had Wee, for fome time after our coming hither occafion to make ufe thereof, yet
did

did We never set up our Bounds three miles east of Merrimack, as the Petition mentioneth. But, as occasion was given, haue alwayes asserted the same Limits, that now Wee claime, tho Wee knew not certainly, till Tryal made, where it would fall.

In the meane time several Persons procured Patents of certaine Tracts of Land wthin the Limits formerly granted us. Whence it came to passe that there were several little Governments, sometimes by Patents, sometimes by Combination, sometimes the People left in distraction and Confusion, without any; and in great danger and hazard of shedding one another's blood.

Whereupon, first divers of the Inhabitants of Pascattaqua petitioned this Court, that as they were conceived to bee within the Line; soe they might bee actually taken in and Govern'd by us, w^{ch} accordingly was done, by Commissioners sent from this Court, with y^e general consent & good liking of all the Inhabitants, & persons interested therein, and soe wee haue continued in Peace, and enjoying the fruit and benefit of good Government to this day.

After wee tooke a more exact survey of our Limits and finding those easterly Parts mentioned in y^e Petition to fall within our Patent, w^{ch} is more antient & more authentic, than any other pretended unto by y^e Petitioners, Wee made Declaration thereof to the Inhabitants residing within the aforefaid Precincts, being likewise petitioned soe to doe, by divers of the Inhabitants of Pasquataqua (a River now called Yorkshier) and after some agitation, and conference with the rest of the People there, wee came to a friendly & amicable Conclusion, that as they were within our Patent soe
they

they would for ever bee subject to our Government, wherein they were well satisfied, and find the benefit thereof, as their Petition to his Royal Highness doth Declare.

Nor was it matter of profit that moved us hereunto, for wee haue neither receiued, nor expected any thereby. But the Obligation of Duty that lieth upon us, to see the People within Our Patent govern'd according to God, and hath bin Our diligent care & endeavour, and soe shall allwayes bee, That all just possessions and empowerments shalbe preferred & Confirmed to y^e true Proprietors here, as it is amongst the rest of the Inhabitants, that haue been under our Government from the Beginning.

There are several scatterd Inhabitants that liue more easterly, observing the benefit their Neighbours haue reaped by good Governm^t, haue offerd themselves to us, w^{ch} yet wee are slow to accept of, because wthout our Limits, w^{ch} wee desire not to enlarge.

It is noe strange thing that M^r Winthroe, M^r Dudley &c^a should long since, before our Limits were exactly known, seeme to own those for distinct Governm^{ts} w^{ch} in truth were none, but included in this of ours, as upon the running of our Line did manifestly appeare.

Upon complaints relating to y^e Bounds & Limits of the Patent of y^e Massachusets, I humbly desire on their behalf, that they may haue notice thereof, & liberty to answer for themselves, before any determination bee made in the case, w^{ch} being done, I doubt not but they will acquiesce in such conclusion as by the Kings' most Excellent Majestie, or any substituted thereto by him, shall make in the Case.

(Egerton MS., British Museum, No. 2395, Fol. 497.)

DRAUGHT OF A LET^R FROM HIS MAT^{IE} TO THE CORPORATION
OF BOSTON IN NEW ENGLAND.

DEC^R 18, 1674.

TRUSTID AND WELLBELOVED wee Greet you well whereas Ferdinando Gorge and Robert Mafon Esq^{rs} haue humbly represented to us by their Petitions and Complaints that by severall Letters Patents from our Royall Predecessors, They have a Legall Right in their Provinces of Mayne and of Hampshire wherein they have exercised all Jurisdictions as amply and unquestionably as any other Province in New England hath at any time don neare 30 years untill in the yeare 1652 They were disturbed by force and a pretended authoritie derived from you: in the heighth of the late civill wars, and Rebellion in England and other our Dominions and that Since our return to the exercise of our Kingly office, the said pretences and Disturbances are not yet fully removed, to the Interruption of their proprietie and the public peace of those Provinces upon noe other Judgment or Determination then the arbitrarie resolutions and appointments of y^e Govern^r and Councill, influenced by Advices from hence thereby judging our Letters Patents and vacating them, and Disseizing, and taking possession of the Governments estates and Inheritances of our Good Subjects, The said Petitioners have therefore Appealed to our Sovereigne Authoritie and humbly besought us to graunt unto them our Royall Protection: and to examine, adjudge and determine the matters in difference between them and your Corporation, And prevent thereby the more dangerous

dangerous Remedies provided in his Ma^{ties} Graunts for the Relief and Redrefs of the Provinces when they shall find themselves injured and Oppressed, Wee therefore taking into our princely Consideration the Petition and Complaints of the said Ferdinando Gorge: and Rob Mafon and the generall Peace and welfare of New England (which Colonie by the Good blessing of God is improved and grown upp to bee a Greate people and a Considerable part of our foreigne Dominions; having bin perticularly taken care of and assisted in its Infancie by our Royall predecessor, and many of the principall Nobilitie, Gentry and others of this Nation, and the bountifull Contributions, and greate expences from hence) have thought fitt to nominat and appoint A B and C to bee Co^mmiss^{rs} from us to enquire into the state of affaires in our said Colonie, and of the severall Provinces, Jurisdictions Rights and Governm^{ts} relating thereunto; and to endeavour as much as in them lyes to accomodat and reconcile all such matters, Differences and Complaints as shall appeare before them, either in relation to Bounds or other Pretensions betweene you and the said ferdinando Gorge and Robert Mafon; or any other publick Difference, wherein the Peace Quiet and good Governmt of our good People in New England shall bee concerned And becaufe wee are desirous that noe delaie bee given to foe good a work, wee have required the said A B and C to emploie noe farther time then 2 months in their endeavour of reconciling and setling of all matters in difference as above said And that if any such difficulty shall arise, foe that the said matter cannot sufficiently bee accomodated and determined upon the place within that time but that
it

it will be necessarie they should bee brought before us to bee heard and determined by us. We doe hereby appoint and require you fourthwith to elect some discreet person or persons to bee thoroughly and sufficiently instructed and empowred by you to represent you heere and that in the meanwhile noe Act of Force or Violence bee exercised by you as wee shall strictly forbidd it in all others deriving any authoritie from us or our Royall Predecessors in New England, upon any pretence whatfoe-ever untill wee upon a full hearing and due Consideration of what shall bee offered by all parties, as well by such as are Concerned as by our Comissioners upon their enquire and Examination in differently representing the state of affaires in New England, shall give our Royall Judgment and Determination according to Justice and Equitie. It resting solely in our Sovereigne Authoritie to Judge of, and provide for the Peace Safetie and Comon Protection of all our Colonies and Plantations.

A Draught of his Ma^{ties} pleasure to be signified upon the Petition of Ferdinando Gorge and Robert Mafon.

His Ma^{tie} taking into his princely consideration the humble Petition of Ferdinando Gorge and Robert Mafon, and being desirous to provide for the Peace and Union of the Severall Provinces of New England, as well as to doe right to the Petition^{rs}; is graciously pleased to appoint Comiss^{rs} to repaire fourthwith thither with instructions to informe themselves of the differences expressed in the said Petition and to endeavour the accomodating, and reconciling them, and to return after 2 months staye there. And his Ma^{tie} is further pleased to appoint that if any such difficulties shall arise

arise there as shall hinder the effecting thereof to require the Parties disagreeing to elect some discreet person or persons to bee throughly and sufficiently impowred and instructed by them to represent them to his Ma^{tie} heere, as their Agents, that his Ma^{tie} may upon full hearing give his Royall Judgment and Determination according to Justice and Equitie, and the Petitioners are to take notice hereof that they may by them selves or some deputed by them, attend his Ma^{ties} Co^mmissioners at their Arrivall in New England there to make good their Petition and Complaint.

(Additional Manuscripts, British Museum, 28089, fol. 1.)

THE PROPOSALLS OF FERDINANDO GORGES ESQ^R. FOR THE
SALE OF THE PROVINCE OF MAINE IN NEW ENGLAND
TO HIS MAJESTYE.

THAT his Maj^{ty} doe pay presently upon the agreem^t the sume of One thousand pounds. That when his Maj^{ty} shalbe in possession of the said province, then his Maj^{ty} to pay him tenne thousand pounds more by equall paym^{ts} of two thousand pounds a yeare and to be paid within five yeares after his Maj^{ts} said possession.

That vpon the conveying of the said province to his Maj^{ty} such security shalbe given for the payment of the said Tenne thousands as shalbe advised by Councill.

FERDINANDO GORGES.

24 february 167 $\frac{1}{2}$.

End : M^r Gorges propofall ab^t his Land in New England.

(New

(New England Board of Trade Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. VI. B. B. 26.)

To the Queenes most Excellent Maj^{tie} and the R^t Hono^{ble}
the Lords of their Ma^{ties} most Hono^{ble} Privy Councill.

The Case and Petiçon of Ferdinando Gorge Esq^r /
Humbly Sheweth,

That King Charles the first (of blessed memory) by his Letters Patents under the Great Seale of England, bearing date the third day of April in the 15th yeare of his Reigne, Did Give Grant and Confirme unto S^r Ferdinando Gorge Knight his heires and Assignes for ever, the propriety and Government of all that Countrey called the Province of Maine in New England, lying betweene the River of Kennebeck Eastward, and Piscataway Westward, containing one hundred and twenty miles, with divers great priviledges, Royalties, and Jurisdictions therein mentioned and contained, as by the said Letters Patents (Relation being thereunto had) doth fully and at large appeare. And the said S^r Ferdinando Gorge being so seized as aforesaid, did lay out and expend twenty thousand pounds at the least for the better Improvement of the said Province of Maine, And in defending his said Ma^{ties} Right against the powerful opposition he met with from the French Ambassador. Residing at London, who then laid Claime to that Countrey in the behalfe of the King his Master, and the French in Canada and Accadie, which was the occasion of great trouble and expence, After whose death it legally descended and came by Right of Inheritance to Ferdinando Gorge Esq^r Grandson and heir to the said S^r Ferdinando, Whereupon John
Archdale

Archdale Esq^r being Authorized by the said Ferdinando, and at his Request, did pass the Seas for New England, and likewise had a due Commission from his late Ma^{tie} King Charles the second for that purpose, and was Resident upon the said Province of Maine for the space of one yeare or thereabouts, But the Bostoners or Colony of Massachusetts notwithstanding rebelliously vi et armis opposed and withstood his said late Ma^{ty} Comands and Authority, And likewise opposed the said John Archdale in the Execu^{cion} of his said Comission by pretending a Right, and laying a Claim to the Chief part of the said Province, whereof his said late Ma^{tie} was fully informed and satisfied, Whereupon the said Ferdinando was Compelled to defend his Legal Right to the said province ag^t the unjust dealing and oppositions of the said Bostoners, And several persons were sent over to England by the Colony of Massachusetts, who were Encouraged and supported by a publick Charge or Tax made at Boston and elsewhere on that behalfe, and several Hearings were had on both sides before his said late Ma^{tie} in Council, and about ten years Contest at Law, before they could have a full and Conclusive Determination of the matter in Controversy, which did occasion vast Charges, and almost the undoing of the said Ferdinando his Estate and family, And upon a full and long Debate by learned Council on both sides, his said late Ma^{tie} at Council Board was then and there graciously pleased to declare that the said Province, did of Right belong to the said Ferdinando, and accordingly it was Confirmed unto and reinvested upon him, After which the said Ferdinando did humbly offer the said province to his said late Ma^{ty} for a reasonable Considera^{cion}.

as belonging Originally of Right to the Crowne, But his Ma^{tie} did not accept thereof, by reason of the then weighty and publick Affaires at home, But granted him to dispose thereof as he thought convenient, Whereupon he was forced by reason of his great extremity to sell the same to one Usher of Boston for an inconsiderable sume, who afterwards sold the same to the Colony of the Massachusetts. Soon after which his late Ma^{tie} King Charles the Second Orderd a Quo Warranto against the said Corporation of the Massachusetts, and by a Legal Sentence made voyd their Charter.

The premises considered, and also in Consideraçon of the great Charges and losse that the said Ferdinando hath sustained in this matter against the unjust Dealings of the said Bostoners or Massachusetts, And the said Corporaçon being now Dissolved, and become Forfeited And divers of the most Eminent Lawyers in England having given it under their hands, That upon the Dissolution of the Charter of the Massachusetts, the Lands purchased by them of the said Ferdinando Gorge, Returne and remaine in the said Ferdinando Gorge, whom they had Disseized, and not either to the said James Usher, or any other. Your Pet^r understanding divers of the Colony of the Massachusetts seeking for a new Charter from their Ma^{ties} have Inserted therein the Province of Maine, whereunto your Pet^r apprehends himselfe legally entitled.

Your Pet^r doth therefore humbly Pray That his Inheritance may not be given away unto the Bostoners or Massachusetts Colony, but that he may be permitted to maintaine his Right at Law, (if Questioned) he having sent persons to take possession thereof, or (which he rather

rather desires) That her Ma^{tie} and this Hono^{ble} Board will Condescend to hear his Case, and whatsoever shall be at this Hono^{ble} Board determined, your pet^r will Cheerfully submit unto, your pet^r having found by sad experience how unable he is to Cope at Law with a numerous and opulent Corporation.

And your Pet^r shall ever pray, &c.

FERDINANDO GORGES.

End: Ferdinando Gorge Esq^r Reced 9 July 1691.

(New England Board of Trade Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. V. p. 522.)

SUMONS TO M^r ALLEN,⁴⁹⁵ M^r GORGES &c. TO BE HEARD
THE 13TH JULY.

THE Right Hon^{ble} the Lords of the Committee of trade and Plantations having by their Ma's Order under Consideration the Draught of a Charter for y^e Colony of the Massachusetts Bay in New England have appointed to meet at the Councill Chamber [at Whitehall] on Monday the 13th of this

⁴⁹⁵ Samuel Allen was a London merchant, and father-in-law to John Usher. He purchased the title to the Province of New Hampshire of the heirs of John Mason, April 27th, 1691, and removed from London to New England in 1698, when he assumed the office of Governor of New Hampshire; his son-in-law Usher being his Lieutenant-Governor. From the time he arrived in the Province until his death, which occurred May 5th, 1705, he was in constant litigation with other claimants for

the possession of the territory conveyed to him by the Mason heirs. He is spoken of as an honorable merchant and an exemplary Christian. For further particulars concerning him, reference may be had to the *Provincial Records of New Hampshire*, Vol. II. pp. 514-562; *The History of New Hampshire*, by Jeremy Belknap, A. M., Philadelphia, 1784, pp. 301-328; *Annals of Portsmouth*, by Nathaniel Adams, Portsmouth, 1825, pp. 94, 121.

this Inſt: July at 5 of y^e clock in the afternoon when their lo^{ps} will hear M^r Sau^l Allen and M^r Ferdinando Gorges and ſuch others as may be Concerned in the ſetlem^t of the Boundaries of that Colony of which you are to give Notice to M^r Allen and M^r Gorges and ſuch others as may be concerned therein.

To the Meſſenger attending the Co^mittee of Trade and Plantations.

End: 9 July 1691. Summons to M^r Allen, M^r Gorges &c to be heard the 13th July.

(New England Board of Trade Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. V. p. 524.)

REFERENCE OF MY LORD GORGES PETITION CONCERNING
THE MASSACHUSETTS BAY.

AT the Court at Whitehall the 30th of July 1691
Present

The Queens moſt Excellent Ma^{ty} in Councill.

Upon reading the Petition of the R^t Hono^{ble} Richard Lord Gorges Baron of Dundalk in the Kingdome of Ireland, concerning his Title to the County of Maſſachuſetts and other Territorys in New England in America, Humbly praying Her Ma^{ty} not to make any Grant thereof untill his Lo^{pp} be firſt heard therein, as in the Petition annext is more at large ſett forth. It is this day ordered by Her Ma^{ty} in Councill That it be, and it is hereby Referrd to the R^t Hono^{ble} the Lords of the Committee of Trade and Plantations, to examine the matter of the ſaid Petition, and thereupon

thereupon to Report to this Board what Their Lo^{pps} conceive fit to be done therein.

WILLIAM BLATHWAYT.⁴⁹⁶

(New England Board of Trade Papers, Public Records Office, Vol.VI. B. A. p. 24.)

PETICÛN OF FERDINANDO GORGE ESQ.

To the R^t Hono^{ble} the Lords of their Ma^{ties} most Hono^{ble} Privy Council, Committee for Forreigne Plantations.

The humble Petiçon of Ferdinando Gorges Esq^r son and heir of John Gorges Esq^r deceas^d: who was son and heir of S^r Ferdinando Gorges Kn^t long since dec^d Sheweth

That S^r Ferdinando Gorges your Pet^{rs} said Grandfather, was for many years one of the Principal persons in this Nation, who for many years spent a great deale of his time, and very much Impaired his Estate in sending over persons for, and in the planting of severall parts of New England, and obtained for himselfe and Robert Gorges his son from the Crowne, and from the R^t Hon^{ble} the then Councel for the Affairs of New England, called the Plymouth Councel, severall Grants of great and considerable Tracts

⁴⁹⁶ William Blathwait, Esq., of London, whose name so frequently appears in connection with New England, is thus spoken of by Evelyn, under date of June 18th, 1687: "I dined at Mr. Blathwaite's (two miles from Hampton). This gentleman is Secretary of War, Clerk of the Council, &c., having raised himself by his industry from very moderate circumstances. He is a very

proper, handsome person, and very dexterous in business; and besides all this, has married a great fortune. His income by the Army, Council, and Secretary to the Committee of Foreign Plantations, brings him in above £2,000 per annum." He was Parliamentary representative from Bath from 1690 until 1710. He died, August, 1717, full of years and honors.

Traçts of Land in New England aforefaid, But the Governours and Council of Boſton in New England, growing in Wealth, power and Intereſt, made it their conſtant practice, ever ſince the death of his ſaid Grandfather, to oppreſs the father, and your Pet^r and to take from them, and render of no value the Lands in New England, to which your Pet^r is lawfully entituled.

And your Pet^r above twenty years ſince, ſent over one M^r John Archdale, with lawful authority to Act as Governour of that part of your pet^{rs} Eſtate in New England aforefaid, called the province of Mayne, who began to make ſome Settlement of the People then there Reſiding, And there being a Council fitting about the Affaire of the Province, the Governo^r and Council of New England, ſent a Party of men in Armes, and by force took poſſeſſion of the ſaid Province.

Of which violent and unlawfull Proceedings Complaint being made to King Charles the 2^d (of bleſſed memory) ſeveral Hearings were obtained here, during his Reigne, both at Council Board, and the Com^{tees} of Plantaçons, where your Pet^{rs} Right as to the ſaid province of Maine, was plainly made appear.

And after the Expence of a great deale of time and money, your Pet^r being of a ſtraitned Fortune And being confident that the ſaid Governo^r and Company of the Maſſachuſets, would ſtill perplex and weary out your pet^r He was prevailed withall to Accept of the Summe of 1500^l or thereabouts, and for that ſmall Conſideraçon to Convey his Intereſt in the ſaid province of Mayne, to M^r James Uſher their Agent, who as your Pet^r is credibly informed Conveyd
the

the same, to the Governo^r, Councel, or Trustees of the said Massachusets Colony.

Now forasmuch as since the making of the said Conveyance, as your pet^r is informed the Right of the said Massachusets Colony is become forfeited to his late Ma^{tie}: And that the Agents of the said Colony are before this Hon^{ble} Council prosecuting for a new Charter both for the said Colony of the Massachusets, & the said province of Maine, And your Pet^r being also informed by Councel learned in the Law, that he is by vertue of the said forfeiture lawfully entituled both to the said province & other his Estate thereto adjoyning.

Your Pet^r humbly Prays That before any such New Charter be Granted, your Pet^r may be heard by his Councel, and have convenient time given him to send for Witneses to make proof of the matters and things herein suggested, and to make out his Title to that part of the Colony of the Massachusets Granted by the Councel of Plymouth, to your Pet^{rs} uncle Robert Gorges, containing ten miles in front in the Bay of the Massachusets, and thirty miles deep into the Main Land, As also Liberty to Inspect the Books and Records of Proceedings of the said Councel of Plymouth, by whom all Conveyances of Lands in New England were made, your Pet^r having lost many Deeds and papers which have upon several occasions been made use of at Councel Table & Com^{tee} for plantations.

And your Pet^r shall ever Pray &c.

[FERDINANDO GORGES.]

July 30, 1691.

THE LETTERS
OF
SIR FERDINANDO GORGES,

COVERING THE PERIOD FROM 1595 TO 1646.



THE LETTERS
OF
SIR FERDINANDO GORGES,

COVERING THE PERIOD FROM 1595 TO 1646.

(Cecil Papers 171/149.)

SIR F. GORGES TO THE EARL OF ESSEX.⁴⁹⁷

MY MOST HONARABL

By your Lordshipes Comaunde I mak my fellfe bould to troubell your Lordshipe wth thes feue lines, by the which I do houbmly befeech your honor, ernestly to perswad my Lo. Burgh, to continew his determynasion, and promyse, unto your Lordship, for the removinge his Leeftenant governor: whos yousegh, and follesh maner, hath binn so proud, and scornefull touerdes me, as all most I ame Ashamed to be the reporter of it my fellfe.

Sense

⁴⁹⁷ Robert Devereaux, Earl of Essex, was the son of Walter Devereaux and Lettice Knollys, and stepson of that wicked favorite of Elizabeth, the Earl of Leicester, who was supposed to have poisoned the elder Devereaux. Owing to rare personal gifts, the young Earl

attracted the Queen, and by her favor rapidly rose to eminence; but by godless ambition, vanity, and rashness forfeited her esteem, and was brought to the block, February 25th, 1601, at the age of thirty-three, on the charge of instigating a rebellion.

Senſe my laſt cominge over, he hath thretned me unto my faſe, that he would call me unto a corte, to aunſweare (as he termith it), my runinge from my garrifon wth out horder from the Goverment; now my good Lord wer this treu, it wer ſufficient to call in queſtion my life, as weell as the loſinge of my Company, and reputaſion, but this beinge falſe, as my Lo: Burgh can aſſure your Lo. it is: I do humbly and moſt Erneſtly intret your honor at ſouch time as he ſhall mak his Complaint unto your Lordſhipe for ſo I perſeve by his thretes he doth in tende, for any refuſinge to com unto has Corte to aunſwer to any ſouch thinge, that your Lordſhip will, out of your ho. favoure towerds me: and the untruth of his acufaſion; mak him to knowe what it is ſo publikly, and ſo fallſly, to call in queſtion the life, and reputaſion of any gentellman, this do I the rather preſoum to wrght unto your Lo: for that by your honarabl faſour I have receved, the greteſt part of my repitaſion, and that thes wronge hath bin rather offred unto me, by the previlidge of his authority rather than of any Corage or a bility in the man to mak that good he hath follſly fugieſted: humbly cravenge pardon of your Lo: for my bould requeſtes, the which I take in reſoun and deſenſe of my ound reputaſion I am bound to do and that makes me once agayne moſt Earneſtly to intrete your hon: wth uſſinge your Lo: powre in this my juſt deſenſe, and diſcountinanc tourdes hime, the which willbe a menes ſo mouch the rathour to mak him aknoulege his Errour, in that he is perſwadid by reſon of a litell pellſe he hath by his longe miſarablnes raked to gether, that ther with, he is ſoffiſently abl, both to beffrind & countinanſe him ſellſe, in any mater againſt
any

any man, as not ondly by his wordes and ronge to me it may aper, but allso by his skornfull manor of deling. wth my Lo. Burgh ho^s fawwer hath bin the ondly menes of all that hee hath, this humbly prainge to god for the in cres of your honrabl estate, and continuanc of your Lo. hellth I houbly tak my leve from the Brill th 8 of Iune.

Your Lo: Ever to be Comaunded/ FARD: GORGES.

Holograph. Add. To the Right honarabl and my most singlar good Lord the Errell of Effexe yeve thes. End: 8 June 1595 S^r Ferdinando Gorge. 2 pp.

(Cecil Papers 167/55.)

SIR F. GORGES TO THE EARL OF ESSEX.

MOST HO:

Although I canne write unto your Lo: no newes for that ther hath not past any thinge here worthy the trublinge your Lo: wth all, yt for that I defier to many fest my unfained and dutifull servise, the which in my hart and soull, I have voued to your ho: befor any other whome foun-ever, I thought it mete under your Lo: Correction, to youse the opportunyty of this onest mesfenger, whose care & diligence I cane be a wittnes of, whose grefe I finde not to have binne a litell, for that it was his Evell fortun so unhapily to be leste be hinde, to write many wordes of him of home your Lo: shall have so good opertunyty to make triall of wer more then nedfull, wherfor Coumendinge my humble servis unto your Lo: hartily besichinge the all-mighty wth his grafe and holy sperite to protecte and gide you in all your Axcions From plimoth 15 of June.

Your honor to Coumand/ FARD: GORGES.

Holograph. Add: To my most ho: the Errell of Effexe Lo: Genarall of Hur Magestes Army thes. 1 p.

(Cecil

(Cecil Papers 172/31.)

SIR F. GORGES TO THE EARL OF ESSEX.

MOST HONARABL:

My Lorde Bourgh⁴⁹⁸ his most kinde respete unto me & of my repetaſion is ſuch as mor I canne not defier, but ſoo as I perſeue it cheffly profedeth as well from and by your Lo: menes, as of the gouſtes of my cauſe, for the which as for all other your moſte honarabl fafours I canne but geue my fellfe as all redey I have don holy to be deſpoſed of by or at your Lo: pleaſuer Continuinge ſtill unto your Lo. an houbel ſouter, that it may plles your ho: at ſuch time as your Lor: ſhall have menes to Amende my pore repitaſion, by any Impleyement wher in I may be more profitabl unto my Contyrie then here I ame, to remember me, gevenge your Lo: all the Aſhouranſe of anoneſt man, ther leues not any that willbe mor deſirus, to deſerue your moſt Nobell care then my fellfe.

her is not any fertayne newes mor then I ame perſwaded my Lo: Burgh hath writen unto your Lo: of ſave as it is reported, Mounte Dragon⁴⁹⁹ is marched wth 7000 men to uerdes our men to ſee if he canne poſibly levey the ſeche,
or

⁴⁹⁸ William Cecil, Lord Burleigh, was born in 1521, and was a lawyer by profeſſion. He was made ſecretary to Edward VI., who conferred upon him the honor of knighthood. He alſo enjoyed the favor of Queen Mary, and from the acceſſion of Elizabeth, in 1558, until the day of his death in 1598, a period of forty years, he ſhared her confidence, and was the chief ſtay of her reign. He deſervedly ſtands in the firſt rank of Engliſh ſtateſmen.

⁴⁹⁹ Mondragon was a prince of Spain,

and acquired fame, not only for bravery in the field, but for his formal punctilio in matters of etiquette. Form and ceremony were carried to exceſs in Spain; but of all the grandees of the Spaniſh Court, Mondragon excelled in their praſtice. It is ſaid that he would not riſe in the preſence of an equal in rank; ſince by ſo doing, it might appear that he claimed ſuperiority. On one occaſion, great embarraſſment is ſaid to have reſulted from this cuſtom of the prince.

or at the leste by any menes geve foucoure unto y^e toune the which is fayed to be in sounge diffrefe, in fo mouch as they of nefesity must, if they be not releved, render the plafe wth in verrey shorte time. this most humbly cravenge your Lo: parden for my rudenes I humbly take my leve continually praing for the increas of your honor, and Continuans of your Lo: hellth, From the Brill the. 16. of Iuly.

Your Lo: most ashourd to comande / FARD: GORGES.

Holograph. Add : To my most ho: & Espesial good Lorde Erell of Essex thes.
End. S^r Ferdinando Gorge 16 Iuly 1595 At y^e Brill.⁵⁰⁰ 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 39/58.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HON; I dide understand that it had thoroly binne refoullfed upon that the Comodety of pillchers,⁵⁰¹ the which doth amounte, as they doo report unto me who hath hade the delinges in it, not to a bove 200^{ms} or 200^l a yere should have com to the maintenanse of me and my offesors: but
by

⁵⁰⁰ This town is on the left bank of the river Meuse, a pleasant drive of fourteen miles west from Rotterdam, and is interesting as being the cradle of Dutch liberty. In the year 1585 it was, together with the town of Flushing, ceded to Elizabeth as security for aid furnished the Dutch patriots. These towns were held by the English for thirty-one years, and denominated by them the cautionary towns; but in 1616 were restored to the Dutch by James, who was in sore want of money at the time, upon a partial payment of the debt due England, an act which added much to his unpopularity.

⁵⁰¹ There was perhaps no commodity in the realm which escaped yielding tribute to some favorite of the crown; and it would appear by this letter, that a tax on the pilchard fisheries in the vicinity of Plymouth had been assigned or at least promised to Gorges. Carew, who was at this time preparing his *Survey of Cornwall*, calls the pilchard "the least fish in bigness, greatest for gain, and most in number," of all the fish taken on the Cornish coast. It is of the genus *Clupea*, and resembles the herring, but is somewhat thicker and rounder. It has furnished for centuries an important article of food and commerce

by what menes this is for gotten or other waife refoullfed on I do not knowe: for my oundparte feth I am fo far entred in it & that it was hur Magestes plesur to call me unto it, by which menes I have lofte a plafe of greter comoditi then, for oft I perfeve, this is like to be: at what time it allfo plesed hur to comand me to relie my fellffe upon hur Grafus plesur: wher for I do not now intende to fete doune any other note for my fellffe then it shall plesse hur out of hur prinfly harte to thinke me worthey of; confidently ashouringe my fellffe upon your ho: fafor tourerds me in furduringe and urgeinge hur Grafus buntie in confiderrafion I may the better be able to difcharge my duty in the plafe: The number of foulders determined of to doo duty canne by no menes be lefened & therfor I have small hope to geve my fellffe any hellpe by that: The offefors that I intended to have maintained by the forsaide menes .ar thes: a Lefftenant an Ainchente⁵⁰² a Sargent on M^r Gonor⁵⁰³ in the forte an other in the Iflande whos Entertainmentes oulde have amounted to in all fom 50^l a yere: hur Magestes intente to geve it over for avoydieng of Charge, I canne not hellp, but howe nefefarie it is it fhould be carfully looked unto. no man will denie: but if ther be a fourder intente, then I will immagen, by the retourne of S^r: Franfes Drake⁵⁰⁴ I muft plainly protest unto your Lo: home I do fo much

merce to the people of fouthern England, being preferved in large quantities principally by fmoking and pickling, or, as Carew fays, "by fuming, preffing, or pickling." A rival induftry was being carried on by the Spaniards at Corunna. *Vide* Carew's *Survey of Cornwall*, London, 1811, pp. 100, 102.

⁵⁰² An ancient was the bearer of the regimental colors, or as we now fay, an enfig.

⁵⁰³ That is, a master gunner.

⁵⁰⁴ Sir Francis Drake will always enjoy the honor of having been the first Englishman who encompassed the globe. His exploits in the wars with Spain have

much love & honor and unto home I do aknowlege my
sellfe to be so many waife bounde unto: ther canne fall
nothinge mor hevey upon me then the burden of that
disgraffe. I cannot but have a more connfident hope &
ashourans of the strenkth and love of so many of my ho:
frindes, which if my Expetasion be desevd I will contente
my sellfe wth the menest estate in the worellde. & desier to
serve god in cherrity prainge for the good of all, and for
your Lo: in particolor, unto hom I doo most humbly rec-
omend my sellfe craving parden for my trublinge your Lo:
that far: from Plimoth

Your Lo: por kinsman to comande / FARD: GORGES.

28th of March.

Holog. Add: To the Right ho: S^r Robert Siffell Knight And on of hur Magestes
hon: previ Counsell this. End: 28 Mar 1596. S^r Ferdinando Gorges to my
M: From Plymmothe. *readde*; in Cecil's hand. 1 p.

(State Papers, Domestic Correspondence, Elizabeth, Vol. CCLVII. No. 19.)

SIR F. GORGES TO LORD BURGHEY.

RIGHT HONO^RABLE, heare are daylye rumores of th' Eni-
mies intent, to put for theise ptes) to burnne and spoyle
theym, at the lest as they haue pmised themselves, not-
wthstandinge I doe not see what course is taken by anye man
heare to anye purpose for th' impeachm^t of them, but all
men for the moſte pte full of feare & in doubt what to doe;
It is also reported by Some, that came lately from the
Coaste

have been the theme of historian, ro-
mancer, and poet, and will long continue
to be, though the character of the man
was unenviable; his chief virtue being

a bulldog courage, which was the potent
factor in bearing him to success. He
died January 28th, 1595.

Coaste that the Gallies at Bluett,⁵⁰⁵ are in a readines to goe, but it is not knowen whether, for myne owne pte, although I doubt not, but yf there be anye such thinge, yo^r Lo: haue Adv^rticem^t from others, yet in dischardge of my dutye I thought yt meete to giue yo^r Lo: to understand what is heare reported, that in tyme yo^r. Ho^rs maye thincke what course is best to be taken for the p^rventing of future dangers. besides, lest yt maye be thought by yo^r Lo^rships. that I in that yt hath pleased her M^atye, to commaund me hether, should take some course in the best man^r that maye bee, to make hedde against them, (for so I understoode here M^a^ties pleasure to bee) at such tyme as they should make anye attempte, as well as to take care for the seacuringe of this place alone, & seeinge the danger of thinge, & howe reasonablie it is for them, they should attempt somthinge upon us, & knowinge myself to haue no Au^thoritye or warrant, either from her M^atye or from yo^r Lo^rship^s whereby they maye (that ar heare to be co^mmaunded) take notyce of her highnes pleasure: I thought yt convenient for my better warrant, humblye to praye yo^r Lo^r (yf it be still her Ma^ties intent) that I may haue yt under her Highnes hand, for oth^rwise as yo^r Lo: doeth knowe, I shall neither be secured in what I doe, nor will they bee willinge to doe, what is convenient for themselves, th^r experience of the w^{ch} I haue founde alreadye, & that maketh mee to write the more bolder unto yo^r Lo^r./ As con^cninge the 50 men that ar appoynted for the garde of the Forte & Islande, yt is tyme that they were heare alreadye, as well to discharge

⁵⁰⁵ Blavet, called by Raleigh Blewatt, roadstead for the fleet to which Gorges is a seaport on the north coast of France. alludes.
It furnished an excellent harbor and

charge the Dutye of Souldiers, as also to giue some helpe
towards the finishinge of the worke, yf yo^r Lo: did but
see, what I doe dayelye see, yo^r Ho: would make as much
speede in causinge them to be sent as I am earnest to sollicite
yo^r Lo: for them, Humblye Committinge yt to yo^r Lo:
wisdom & consideracon, cravinge yo^r Lo: pardon & pray-
inge to God for th increase of yo^r Lo: hono^r & health I
humblye take my leave/ Plymouth the XIJth of Aprill
1596./

Yo^r Lo: moste humblye to Commaunde /

FARD: GORGES.

End: 1596.

(State Papers, Domestic Correspondence, Elizabeth, Vol. CCLVII. No. 20.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.⁵⁰⁶

RIGHT HONO^rABLE, I haue written a Lr^e unto my Lo:
yo^r Lo^rships^s Father, the Coppie of which I haue sent yo^r
Lo: heare inclosed, humbly desiringe yo^r Ho: to consider
of yt, for the p^rventinge of those evils w^{ch} maye heereafter
infue; yt is wthout all questione, that th' enemye hath an
intent by all the meanes they are able, to hinder the goinge
forwarde of this jorney, & when they shall see they are not
able to doe yt, they will seeke assoone as they are gone, to
put some men a Shoare, & yf it be possible they will possesse
themselves

⁵⁰⁶ Sir Robert Cecil was the younger son of Lord Burghley and Mildred Cooke, and was born in 1563. He was a skilful politician and an astute statesman, but was physically inferior to the other royal favorites; yet he held his position by sheer force of intellect against the most powerful rivals. He was cre-

ated Earl of Salisbury May 4th, 1605, by James I., who retained him awhile in the office of Secretary of State which he had enjoyed under his predecessor, and then appointed him his Lord High Treasurer. Previous to his death, which took place in 1612, and which is most graphically described by his chaplain,

themselves of some lytle place or other, to help recov^r their owne disgrace. Yf thinge be not otherwise looked unto & better gaurded then yet they are, they may (wthout anye great daunger to themselves) doe more then I would bee willinge they shold attempt before wee be in a bett^r readynes for them. Yet maye be, the attendinge her Māties pleasure for my entertaynm^t, wilbe a hinderaunce to th^e assigninge of my Commiſſion for that matt^r, Whatſoev^r yo^r Lo: can reaſonablye pſwade her Highnes unto ſhall ſatisfye me, for I pteſt to God I never had nor ever will haue ſo great a reſpect to anye pticuler Co^mmoditye of myne owne, as I will either neclect my dutye unto her Mātye, or defer to ſerue my Contrye, eſpeciallye at this tyme when I knowe the danger to be ſo greate, and that I can better diſcharge my dutye in this place then manye others that hath not had the like experience. I am too bolde (I muſt confeſſe) to write thus much unto yo^r Lo: Yet th^e affuraunce I haue of yo^r Lo: Hono^rable favo^r and love, beeinge ſoe manye tymes Witneſſed unto mee by yo^r kinde Care & Welwiſhingee, although I muſt confeſſe, that I doe not fynde myſelf to deſerve the leaſt of them, And ſythence I am not able to make anye other payem^t, I will continuallye praye for th^e increaſe of yo^r hono^r.—Plymouth the XIJth of Aprill 1596. /

Yo^r Lo: affured to Co^mmaund / FARD: GORGES.

End: To the Right Hono^rable and my moſte affured Frende S^t Robte Cicell knight & of her Māties moſte hono^rable privye Councello^r yeve theſe. 12 Apr: 1596. S^t Far: Gorges to my M^t From Plymmothe. /

(Cecil

lain, Dr. John Bowles, he had fallen bly have ended his career in diſgrace, under the fickle King's diſpleaſure, and like ſo many other royal ſervants. but for his ſudden death, would proba-

(Cecil Papers 40/19.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONO^RABLE. there is brought heather by Capt: Clifforde a certaine Fly bote⁵⁰⁷ of Stawvert of Freezeland,⁵⁰⁸ in w^{ch} there is founde manye things belonginge unto Portugall merchaunts, as their tres and Bills of loadinge doth manifest. I have written of yt unto my Lo: yo^r Lo^rship^s Father, & thought yt likewife my dutye to advertize yo^r ho: of it in that both shee & her lodinge are delivered into my hands by Capt: Clifforde: & in regarde of my want of experience in such matters, I have taken for my help M^r Stallenge, & nowe I onelye attend what it shall please yo^r Lo^rship^s to commaunde.

Concerning myne owne occa[~]ions, I have & doe referr my self unto yo^r Lo: noble & kinde remembrance of mee, whoe doe take my self partlye to be disgraced, in that I am heare lefte neglected as either unworthy in my self, or unfortunate in my Friends; for my beeing heare is to noe purpose, yf I maye neither have ample au^thoritye or sufficient meanes to dischardge that for w^{ch} I com, my last tres did sufficiently make manifest the necessitye of things, and therefor I shall not neede to trouble yo^r Lo: wth much at thes p^rsent, onelye I doe desire that those men that are appoynted to com, maye bee sent wth speede, for yt were better they com too soone, then tarye too longe. Humblye remembringe my

⁵⁰⁷ A flyboat was a long and rather flat-bottomed vessel, and was chiefly used by the Dutch in coasting.

⁵⁰⁸ A seaport in the Province of

Friesland on the Zuyder Zee, at this time of some importance, but now fallen into decay, principally on account of the filling up of the harbor.

my dutye unto yo^r Lo: whose hono^rable favo^{rs}, I with myself able to deserve, till. when I will continuallye praye for th' increafe of yo^r hono^r. Plymouth the 21th daye of Aprill 1596.

Yo^r Lo^rshipp^s to Commaunde / FARD: GORGES.

Add: To the Right Hono^rable myne approved good Lo: S^r Robt Cyffell Knight one of her M^aties moste hono^rable p^rvyve Counsell yeve theis. End: 21 Apr. 1596. S^r Fardynando Gorges to my M^r. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 40/102.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONO^RABLE. I receaved yo^r Lo^{rs} letter the 18th at feaven of the Clock in the morning, aboute the which tyme, I alsoe delivered them unto their Lo: desiring their Lo: to make certificatt accordinglye, and withall to take notice of the necessities of this place accordinglye to th effect of yo^r last l^re, for yt is moste like, p^resentlye after the departure of the Fleet from hence, that th'enemye will attempt some thinge uppon these partes, and so much the more like, for that it is reported they haue certaine Shippes to the number of some 40 Sayles, all readye upon the Coast of Britannye, the which (yf their Lo: doe fayle to meete wthall) will afaye what Gaurde wee keepe heere. Acknowledginge myself moste bounde unto yo^r Ho: for yo^r manye and Ho^r^{ble} favo^{rs}, for the which, I can onelye bee, as I will moste honestlye bee.

Yo^r Ho^{rs}: moste at Commaund / FARD: GORGES.

PLYMOTH the 18th of Maye 1596.

Add: To the Right Hono^rable and my moste approued S^r Roberte Ciffell Knight one of her M^aties moste ho^r^{ble} Privye Counsell yeve thes. End: 18 May 1596. S^r Ferd: Gorges to my M^r. ½ p.

(Cecil

(Cecil Papers 41/46.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONO^RABLE, the second daye of June towards the Evening the Fleete was inforst to put into the Sound againe, but upon the third, they fett Sayle aboute aleaven of the clock in the forenoone, & were all cleere out of sight before the writinge hereof, the w^{ch} I thought meete to advertize yo^r Ho: off, there was none of the Generalls themselves ashoare, neither did they suffer anye of their Companey except such as by unffortune the night before they came in, had spent their masts or gotten some leakes, as had one Flye boate, and a Shippe of London, w^{ch} Ship having spent her fore top mast, is notwthstanding gone alonge wth the Fleete, but the Fly boate is inforst to unshipp her proviçõs & imbarck yt in a Hulke, w^{ch} wilbe readye some five or fixe dayes hence; other newes there hath not bin anye since the departure of S^r Henrye Lea⁵⁰⁹ & M^r Fooke Grivell. For myne owne partè I doe builde my hopes uppon yo^r Ho: favo^r, not doubting but their Lo^r: shipp^s havinge made knowen by their ãres unto my Lo: yo^r Ho: Father, the dangerous estate of things heere, yt would please his Lo: to bee a meanes that those 50 men appointed for the Gaurde of this place, may be dispatched, whose p^rsence would give courage to the poore people,

⁵⁰⁹ Sir Henry Lee was one of the most gallant men of Queen Elizabeth's Court. So enthusiastic was he in his devotion to his royal mistress, that he presented himself annually on the 17th day of November as her champion, to prove by force of arms to all comers who dared dissent from him, that she

was the most beautiful and virtuous woman in the world. This custom of Sir Henry Lee established the 17th of November as the annual tilting day in England, and drew together large numbers of persons interested in feats of arms from all parts of Europe. He died in 1611 at the age of eighty.

people, whoe are nowe in doubte what to doe, and alfoe fecure this place, w^{ch} lyeth as a praye to th'enimy, or rather perfwadinge them to that, w^{ch} heretofore could not fo eafelye have bin beleived of them. It is my dutye to advertize thus much, but were yt not unto yo^r Ho: I would rather be contented to be fylent, as knowinge yt would be imagined I speake more for my particuler Commoditie, then that there is anye fuch neceffitye, and yf all the mens opinions that hath bin heere at this p^rsent of any judgment or understandinge had bin asked, they would wth one voyce have fayd as much or more, as I at any tyme have written. Alfoe my humble request is that yt would please yo^r Ho: to confider the Charge that I leive att, & my noe entertainem^t the w^{ch} I have hetherunto refeaved, by the w^{ch} yo^r Ho: fhall ever binde mee to continewe my felf

At your ho ferves / FARD: GORGES.

PLYMOTH the third daye of Iune.

Add: To the Right Hono^rable S^r Robte Ciffell Knight one of her M^aties moſte ho: privye Counfell yeve thes. End: 3 Junii 1596. S^r Fer: Gorges to my M^r: From Plymmothe. This day y^e Fleet put to ſea, and was not ſeen after warde. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 41/49.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT Ho: I thought yt meete to advertize yo^r Ho: of ſome things that hath paſte betweene the Townes men & mee, for havinge aſſembled themſelves to gether to conſult as it ſhould ſeeme, of things concerninge the defence of themſelves & their Towne, and beeinge in the middeſt of their Conſultacons they ſent for mee by a S^rjeant to com
unto

unto them. Nowe I must plainly confesse unto yo^r Ho:
that I skorned anye such manner of sending for, and re-
turned him back againe this verye answer & noe other, that
yf M^r Maior and his Bretherne had anye thinge to saye unto
mee, I prayed them to com unto my Lodginge where I
would meete them, they receaving this aunswer, thought
themselves to be disgraced & brake up their Counsell in
a great furye, M^r Maior came into the Forte unto mee,
tellinge mee that I did them great wronge, to offer them
that, and in soe foolish & soe bravinge a manner it was done,
as yt will hardlye be beleived, and told mee that they would
muster & order their men at their owne pleasures, wth manye
other idle and foolish speeches, where upon I advised him
verye soberlye to look unto it, and not to doe yt w^{thout}
order from yo^r Ho:^{rs} wthall lettinge him to knowe that yt
became him not to offer to drawe men into armes so neare a
Fortificacon of her Māties but by leave of the Commaundo^r
of the place, but hee aunswered mee, that I had noe Com-
mission to commaunde or impeach them from doinge what
they listd, upon the which, I p^rsentlye commaunded him,
(sithenc hee knewe as well as myself the preparacon of th'en-
imy & their owne dangers), he would take order to send a
proporcon of men into the Island, & another into the Forte,
hee denied to receave anye Commaudem^t from mee for anye
such matter and soe departed, but by this yo^r Ho: maye see
how necessarye it is for a man that doth intend to discharge
the utmoste of his dutye, to have a Commission soe ample, as
hee maye w^{thout} all Cavell or contradicon of soe ignorant &
stubbarne a people, commaunde in discrefion what is for her
Māties service & for their owne fasties, the w^{ch} thos poore
men

men are altogether ignorant off, and for myne owne parte I write not this to complayne of them, but humbly to intreat yo^r Ho: to consider of yt, so as I maye not receave more disgraces for want of aucthoritye sufficient, then I shalbe able to doe her M^{tie} service. Thus beeinge one-lye able to troble yo^r Ho: though alwayes readye to doe you all the hono^r & service that so poore a man is able to performe.

Your Ho: most at commaund / FARD: GORGES.

PLYMOUTH the 5th of June 1596.

Add. To the Right Hono^rable S^r Rob^{te} Ciffell Knight, one of her M^{ties} moste Ho: privy Counsell yeve thes. End: 5 Junii 1596. S^r Far. Gorge to my M^r from Plymmothe. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 42/31.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HO^{BL^E}: our late alarom maye cause mee to receave some blame yf it bee not favorablie construed by yo^r Ho: and the rest, but beefore I undertooke yt, I acquainted my Lo: Lieuteññt and others the Deputie Lieuteññts of the Shere wth my intente, the w^{ch} made mee the more bolder, besides the fitnes of the opportunitie, the enemye beinge upon the Coaste to the number of 30^{tie} Saile of Shippinge, as they themselves knowe, whoe havinge not longe since taken off o^r Fishermen in the mouth of the harbo^r, and the unwillingnes of some of the Inhabitannts to furnishe them selves wth such furniture as is meete for their owne defence, the one beinge a meanes to cause yt to bee the more certainlie beleived, the other plainlye demonstratinge unto them the
wante

wante of those things the w^{ch} they maye reasonablie provide themselves off. And nowe by myne owne experience I finde they are neither armed accordinge as from time to time they perswaded me they were, nor will they be easelie drawne to anye good order, but what maye be done yo^r Ho: shall heare I will doe to the utmoste of my powre, and they have assuredlie promised mee to amende all that is in their powers to help, other newes here is not anye save that I had a smale prize of Rice sent me in by a Pynnesse of myne, the w^{ch} I sent after the Fleete, taken some 40^{tie} Leagues off the Cape, bound for Lisborne, who doth reporte that too daies before shee was taken (the w^{ch} was the 17th of Iune) she sawe the Fleete bearinge for Cales. thus humblye cravinge yo^r Ho: pardon acknowledginge the manye bands by the w^{ch} I finde my self indebted unto yo^r Ho: and beeinge hable to make payement of noe more, I beseech of yo^w to accept of me as

Your ho: Ever at coumaunde /

FARD: GORGES.

PLYMOTH the 10th of Iulye 1596.

Add: To the Right Ho^{ble} S^r Robte Ceffill Knight one of her Maties moste ho^{ble} privie Counsaile thes. End: 10 July 1596 S^r Far: Gorges to my M^r From Plymmoth, 30 Sayle of Shippes descried on y^e Coaste. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 42/73.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONORABLE: I have forborne to trouble your Ho: chieflye for that ther hath not arived any maner of certeyn newes, sinse the wrightinge of my last letters, more then as I
have

have written to my Lo: your Ho: father and your honor in answere of M^r Saunders his busines In the which I doe also desire your Ho: to take notes of such artillery as for the present time I have taken in, and doe hope it will not be dislikinge to theyr Lo: In like maner in what fort I doe proceed wth them of the towne I will accordinge unto my dutye make it knowne unto your Ho: whose many favours and honorable opinion I will endeavour to the uttermost of my power to deserve.

Your Ho: ever to be commaunded / FARD: GORGES.

from the forte at PLIMOTH the 22th of Julye 1596.

Add. To the Right Honorable Sir Robert Cicell Knight principall secretaire to her majestie these be dd. End: 22 July 1596, S^r Ferdinando Gorges to my mafter. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 43/61.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

So foone as I had dispatched my last letters unto your Ho: my lo: admirall⁶¹⁰ arived wth y^e greatest part of y^e navye and this night my lo: of Effex wth all y^e rest of y^e fleet wilbe here. I doe not fe but y^t very much goods wilbe embezled for y^e commiffioners are not yeat com downe from y^e court, and
the

⁶¹⁰ Sir Charles Howard, second Baron Howard of Effingham. For his great abilities in naval warfare he was created Lord High Admiral of England in 1585. He commanded the English fleet at the time of the destruction of the Spanish Armada, and was equally conspicuous in the capture of Cadiz and destruction

of the Spanish fleet. For these services the Queen bestowed upon him, in 1597, the earldom of Nottingham. He was a man of luxurious tastes, and lived in great magnificence, having, it is said, seven different seats, which he occupied by turns. He died in 1624.

the other commiffion uppon the lo: comminge is now to
furceafe. And thus wth remembraunce of my humble duty
I committ your Ho: to y^e protection of y^e almightie

Your Ho: to commaund/ FARD: GORGES.

Add. To ye right honorable Sir Robert Ciffell Knight principall fecretarye to
her Ma^{tie}. End: 7 Aug: 1596 Sr Far: Gorges to my Mr L. Adm^{rel} arrived
at Plymmoth wth moft parte of y^e Navye. ½ p.

(Cecil Papers 43/64.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

I HAVE receyved your ho: letters of y^e 6th of this month
wherin is to bee feene a purpofe in her ma^{tie} to revictall
certeyne fhippinge for y^e meetinge wth ye Indian Fleet, as
also for y^e transportinge of certeyne companies for y^e lowe
contryes, and others for Ireland. for y^e firft your ho: fhall
perceyve will hardly be affented unto, but y^e twoe latter wth
fmale difficulty wilbe brought to paffe, for y^e manner how
they may be furnifhed wth provifion of victalls your ho:
fhall underftand by y^e letter from Mr Stallenge and my
felfe. Nowe if I may be bowld under your ho: correction,
to fpeake what I thinke in my poore opinion what may be
done in this cafe. I would fay in wth out offence to any
man of better judgment then my felfe that all this might
very welbe performed. for firft wheras it wilbe fayd theyr
fhippes are many of them, fome leakinge fome noe winter
fhippes, many of their mariners ficke and deade and fome
of theyr fowldiers alfo, wherby they are perfwaded it is im-
poffible they fhould be newe furnifhed in any reafonable
time eyther wth men or victalls, to y^e w^{ch} I anfwer that I
doubt

doubt not, but here are Shippes of her ma^{tie} y^t may in very short time be furnished if speedy order be taken in it according to her ma^{tie} expectation. for this they must doe yf they will doe any thinge presently bringe all of them that they will use for that voyage into y^e harbour and instantly disimbarke the greatest part of y^e men, saving such as are to be used and employd as laborours, and by that meanes y^e shippes may be sweetned and trimmed, whilst y^e victalls are providinge and fresh men may be putt into them, wherof ther wilbe a sufficient number fownd, and the like may be done to some of the best marchants shippes. As for y^e fowldiers, that are to goe into y^e lowe countries, they may be transported in those flemish bottomes w^{ch} are here and very fitly convoyed wth theyr owne mean of warr. Those appoynted for Ireland may be transported in y^e hoyes that are here and some other shippes such as may conveniently serve the turne, they that are to be lefte behind for y^e sickmen, they are to be sent into theyr contryes as others also not to be employd in thes service. humbly recommending this unto your ho: wisdome knowing that your ho: is not ignorant, that all y^t is already done is just nothing if this be not putt in practise. I humbly take my leave, desiringe to be excused for not wrighting oftener when ther is not some necessary occasion that offereth it selfe. thus continuing

Your ho: ever to command / FARD: GORGES.

from PLIMOTH y^e 8th of August 1596.

Add: To ye Right honorable Sir Robert Ciffell principall secretarye to her ma^{tie} at y^e court. End: 8th of August 1596. Mr Ferdinando Gorge to my M^r 1 p.

(Cecil

(Cecil Papers 43/67.)

SIR F. GORGES AND MR. STALLENGE TO THE COUNCIL.

WITH the remembraunce of o^r moſte humble duties; It maie pleaſe yo^r good Lops. In the abſence of M^r Darell,⁵¹¹ wee have thought it meete to ſignifie oure opinions concerning th effecting of that her Ma^{ty} pleaſure is ſhould be undertaken for the intercepting of the Indian Fleete, or the Cariques;⁵¹²

Wee ſuppoſe in the 10 ſhips of her Ma^{ty} and 12 others beeing of the better forte, as is neidful, there maie be imploide aboute . 3800 . men w^{ch} with the helpe of fuche ruſke,⁵¹³ wines oille, Rice and tonnyfiſhe,⁵¹⁴ as is retourned in theſe ſhips (having preſent money) maie within 3 weekes be verie well ſupplied with the reſt for 2 monethes victuals and without any great charges to her ma^{ty}, or greiffe to the Countrey, So as the ſicke men, and others retourned from this ſervice, not other waies to be imploide, maie be forthwith diſmiſſed from theis partes, and withall preſent order maie be geven, the officers make not ſpoille of that w^{ch} is nowe remaining in the ſhips;

M^r

⁵¹¹ Sir Marmaduke Darrell, of Buckinghamſhire, was a member of the family formerly poſſeſſed of Littlecote, which became the property of Sir John Popham, as related elſewhere. He was coſeſſer to King James as well as to his ſucceſſor Charles I., and Surveyor-General of Victuals to the navy and marine forces. He was knighted at Whitehall on the acceſſion of James in 1603, and died March 22d, 1631.

⁵¹² The carack was a veſſel broad and deep and of great burden, built for carrying large cargoes, as the name indicates.

⁵¹³ This was hard bread for uſe on ſhipboard.

⁵¹⁴ The tunny is a fiſh of the mackerel family, and is an excellent food-fiſh. It abounds in the Mediterranean, and often attains the weight of a thouſand pounds.

Mr Darell departed from hens this afternoone unto whome by a messenger of purpose wee have signified yo^r Lps pleasures, and do expect him here this next morning, and having understoode by him what remainers of victualls are in the Fleete, your hono^{rs} shall foorthwith be more particulerlie adverticed howe all thinges maie be accomplished.

Wee do not finde, but the number of ships maie verie well be furnished of thofe nowe retourned of this service, with some smalle coste bestowed on them.

For the furnishing of victualls for . 1000 . Souldiers to be sent into Irelannd, the same maie verie well be donne in these parts. and shipping found fitte for the same ; and so with o^r humble duties to yo^r Lps ; wee comitt yo^u to god,

Yo^r Lps humble at comaundem^t/ FARD : GORGES.
W^m STALLENGE.

PLIMOUTH the 9th of August ann^o 1596.

Add. For her Ma^{ts} affaires. To the Right honourables the Lordes of her Ma^{ts} moste honourable privie counsell. At courte. End. 9 of Auguste 1596
Mr Ferdinando Gorge and Mr Stallenge to the Lords of the Counsaile. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 43/86.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONORABLE. Your letters cam two dayes to shorte, by reason of the sodaine departure of my Lo: Admerall wth the hole fleate bothe Englishe and Dutch, whereby it is to be feared, those honorable designements thought upon by yo^r Lordships wilbe frustrated ; thoughe for my owne parte I doe not doubte of the necessitie of eather : it as a pore well-
willer

willer of my cuntries good, I doe hertelye wishe that that of the Indean fleate had gon forward for wth out all contradiçtion it was the most refoneblest and most neceffarest that coulede have bin thought of; unlesse peradventure there are some secrets w^{ch} to us pore commoners are unknowne. I doubte not but your honor have receaved the perticulers of ou^r proceedinges heare from the rest of the commitioners, whoe I must confesse are better able because better acquainted wth those corfes then I am; besides I have bin trublede this two dayes wth an extreame burninge feaver, the whiche dothe inforse me to use this brevitie with your honor; and alwaies to praye for you whoe have bin soe exceedinge noble unto me, and unfaynedlye to give my selfe to be disposed at

Yo^r honors commande / FARD: GORGES.

PLYMOUTH 13th of August 1596.

Holog. Add: for her Ma^{ties} spetiall service. To the Right honorable S^r Robert Siffell knight principall secretarie to her magistie Plymouth 13th August at night post hast hast hast Fard: Gorges. End: 13 August 1596 S^r Fa: Gorges to my M^{ty} 1 p. plymouth 13th August 11 at night. [Here follow the signatures of the postmasters on the route.] At Ashburton at 4 of the clock in the morninge. At Exeter passe 7 of the clocke in the morning the 14 of August. Re at Honyton half our after 9 of the clocke in the mornynge. [torn off] Re^d at Andover the 15 of Auguste at 10 a clocke in the morninge. At Baffing stock half an ouer after 11 klok. Harttfordbridge at 3 after nowen.

(Cecil Papers 44/48.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONORABLE myne evill fortune, to be sick at this present, may be a meanes, I may receyve condemnation of negligence, and forgetfullnes of my duty, but I hope to find

find better conſtructions. My deſire is eſpecially to ſatiſſie your Ho: unto y^e end I would be loth ther ſhould be bredd in you, any manner of occaſion to ſuſpect me, whoſe deſire is by all meanes, to hould your honorable opinion, and in what meaſure I ſhall poſſibly be able, to deſerve your many, and moſt honorable, and kind favours, done unto me, although I acknowledge, I am farr more like, to uſe your dayly favours, then that I ſee any cauſe, you ſhould have, to make uſe of my poore ſervice; as at this preſent, when I have had a poore fortune, brought by y^e travell, of a company of poore mariners, to my hands, amounting to y^e value of 4 tonne of quickſilver, and being a commiſſioner to examine others, I thought it my dutie in honeſtie, and conſcience, to declare agaynſt my ſelfe, but as your Ho: may perceive by my letter, to your honours, ther wilbe ſmale hope of recovering any thing back agayne, but yeat my deſire is, her mat^{ies} gracious opinion, may not for this be drawne from me, neyther yeat that theyr Lo: will conceive the worſt, ſith I had a deſire, to ſatiſſie my creditours wth this fortune Thus humbly referringe, to your ho: wiſdom, and pleaſure what your ho: pleaſure is to command me to doe, ey ther in this concerning my dutye, or in any thing elſe, wherin my ſervice may appere to your ho: who hath power to diſpoſe of me at

Your ho: pleaſure during life /

FARD: GORGES.

from PLIMOTH the 2 of September 1596.

Add. To y^e Right honorable Sir Robert Ciffell knight, principall ſecretarye to her Mat^{ie}. End. 2 Sep 1596. S^r Fa: Gorges to my M^r concerning his Priſe of Quickſilver being 4 tonne. 1 p.

(Cecil

(Cecil Papers 44/76.)

[SIR F. GORGES] TO LORD BURGHLEY.

RIGHT HONORABLE, my humble duty remembred, these are to signifie unto your Lo: that according to our duties we have performed what lieth in us. And in discharge of my particular I thought it meet to advertise your Lo: what hath bin done in this time, wherein we have examined many uppon oth and have fownd diverse of them carelesse both of bodye and soule, some we have made bould to punish in example of others, presuming that your Lo: wilbe pleased, to be a meane, that what we have done in that behalfe, or hereafter shall doe uppon the like consideration, that we may be helde blameles, for our well meaninge to her ma^{tie} service. Besides we find that the most part of the things w^{ch} have bin sould here, was out of such shipping as arived here fom 3 or 4 dayes before the whole fleet, and those shippes w^{ch} had ought of any value had license by one or both of the Lo^{ds} generalls to depart and such license, as it was lawfull for them to make sale of any thinge they had wthout impeachment of any man. Nowe we would gladly know how it is your Lo: pleasure we should understand those licenses, other things then by those authorities were sould; we find nothing of any moment. In like manner such goods as were brought into this place by any vessells belonginge to this harbour, were imbarked by such, as had them freely given unto them by the generalls them selves, so as we for our parts doe not see what is more to be done, then that we have already performed, that is to take notice of the goods, the men of whom they were bought, the persons

fons in whose hands they are, and taking order they may be forth comminge or the value of them att your Lo: pleasure. If any thing more be in our duties to performe we humbly desire to be instructed from your Lo: we have intelligence of very many superstitious bookes that were brought from Cales, which are very daungerously spread abroad and may doe very much If they be not suppressed wherfore in this matter also we humbly crave your Lo: direction.

frō PLIMOTH the 8th of September 1596.

This letter is unsigned, but it bears Gorges' seal, & is in the same clerk's hand as 44/48. Add: To the Right honorable my singular good Lo: y^e Lo: high Threafurour of England. No endorsement. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 44/80.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONORABLE, for that it is not unknowne unto your ho: howe meane my estate and reputation in this place is, by the necessitie wherof I am enforced continually rather to be a troble then otherwise unto myne honorable frends, and howlding your ho: as one of the cheefest of them, I am embowldened to crave your honorable helpe and furtherance, in this my poore sute, the w^{ch} is that fith Sir Ihon Gilbert⁵¹⁵ is dead, and his place of viceadmiraltie voyd, I
may

⁵¹⁵ The Sir John Gilbert here mentioned was the uterine brother of Sir Walter Raleigh and brother to the famous Sir Humphrey and Adrian Gilbert. He had served as Deputy Vice-

Admiral of Devon for ten years, having first obtained his office in 1586 through the influence of Raleigh, who was then Vice-Admiral of Cornwall and Devon.

may be held in your honorable opinion worthy of it, and that by your meanes I may so be nominated for it, w^{ch} if I may atteyne unto, I shalbe more enabled to make shewe how much I acknowledge my selfe bownd unto your ho: and in the meane time (as evermore I will) I doe pray for your encrease of honour, and prefurvation of helth. And foe I rest continually.

Your Ho: ever at command/ FARD: GORGES.

from PLIMOTH the 10th of September 1596.

Add: To the Right honorable S^r Robert Ciffell knight, principall secretarye to her Ma^{tie}. End: 10 Sept 1586. S^r Far: Gorges to my M^r from Plymmothe. S^r Jo: Gylbert dead. 1 p.





I N D E X.





INDEX.

A.

Abenakis, 75.
Aberemet, 14.
Acadia, 214.
Achims, Mary, 167.
Achims, Thomas, 167.
Adams, Nathaniel, 217.
Adelmar, Sir Julius Cæsar, 30, 32.
Agamentico River, 57, 58.
Aifhe, John, 166.
Albemarle, 199.
Alderton, 164.
Alderton Church, 164.
Alexander, Sir Jerome, 189.
Alexander, Rose, 189.
Alexander, Sir William, 55, 56.
Allen, John, 150.
Allen, Samuel, 217, 218.
All Saints' Church, 161.
Alvarez, Pedro, 71.
Ambergris, 126.
America, 3, 4, 8, 12, 22, 32, 45, 46, 71,
175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 182, 189,
195, 199, 201, 203, 218.
Amiens, 62.
Ancient, 230.
Andros, Sir Edmund, 172.
Archæologia, 153, 160.

Archdale, 169, 170, 214, 215, 220.
Archdale, Mary, 174.
Archdale, Thomas, 174.
Armada, 242.
Arthur, Prince of Wales, 160.
Arundel, Earl of, 7, 8, 31, 32, 35, 54.
Ashburton, 247.
Ashley, 174.
Ashmolean Manuscripts, 158.
Ashton Court, 167.
Ashton Phillips, 167, 174.
Asscomet, 11, 22, 23, 27.
Asticou, 14, 19, 75.
Atlantic Ocean, 25, 171.
Audrey, 191.
Avalon, Province of, 32.
Ayffhe, John, 164.
Azores, 4.

B.

Baden, Margrave of, 164.
Baliol College, 31.
Ballard, the Rev. Edward, 57.
Baltimore, Baron, 32.
Banks, Charles Edward, 169.
Barbadoes, 20, 177, 189, 199.
Bashabas, 14, 19, 21, 74, 75, 76.
Baffing Stock, 247.

- Batavia, 72.
 Bath, 163, 219.
 Battcumbe, 191.
 Baynard, Alice, 186.
 Baynard, Barbara, 186.
 Baynard, Thomas, 186.
 Bay of Boston, 203, 205.
 Beauchamp, Agnes, 158.
 Beauchamp, Joan, 160.
 Beauchamp, John, 160.
 Beddington, 164.
 Bedford, Earl of, 164.
 Belknap, the Rev. Jeremy, 217.
 Bell, Ann, 167.
 Bell, Edward, 151, 167.
 Bell, Edward, Jr., 150.
 Bennett, Governor, 201.
 Bergen-op-Zoom, 23.
 Berkeley, George, Lord, 198.
 Berkeley, Henry, Lord, 165.
 Bermudas, 12, 13.
 Berwick, 154, 157.
 Biard, P. Pierre, 14, 19, 75.
 Blathwait, William, 219.
 Blavet, 232.
 Bligh, William, 167.
 Blunt, Sir Christopher, 92.
 Bodleian Library, 158, 162.
 Boles, William, 54.
 Boleyn, Anne, 33, 161.
 Boston, 57, 148, 173, 203, 216, 220;
 the Corporation of, 171, 210.
 Bostoners, 215, 216.
 Bosworth Field, 161, 167.
 Bowles, Dr. John, 234.
 Boyle, Richard, 198.
 Boyle, Robert, 198, 200.
 Brackley, Viscount, 98.
 Bradford, Gov. William, 48.
 Braunton, 153.
 Brazil, 71, 72.
 Bridport, 158.
 Brighouse, Michael, 203.
 Brightstowe, 161.
 Brill, the, 64, 229.
 Brimstone, 126.
 Bristol, 11, 26, 58, 152, 158.
 British Museum, 85, 92, 158, 159, 163,
 185, 188, 194, 199, 210, 213.
 Brittany, 236.
 Brook, Nathaniel, 177, 178, 179, 182,
 184.
 Brooke, 190.
 Brooke, Baron, 31.
 Brown, Sir William, 116.
 Browne, the Rev. Frederic, 162.
 Brudenell, E., 178, 179.
 Brymore, 199.
 Buckingham, Duke of, 33, 160.
 Buckinghamshire, 245.
 Buckland, John, 150.
 Budockshead, Roger, 163.
 Budockshead, Winifred, 163, 186.
 Burghley, Lord, 225, 226, 227, 228, 231,
 233, 249.
 Burghley Papers, 163.
 Burrage, the Rev. Henry S., 7.

C.

 Cade Rebellion, 161.
 Cadiz, 242.
 Calais, 54, 241, 250.
 Calamy, Edward, 59.
 Caleshall, Cecilia, 153.
 Caleshall, Margaret, 153.
 Caleshall, William, 153.
 Calthrop, Sir Henry, 40.
 Calvert, Cecil, 32.

- Calvert, Sir George, 31, 32.
 Cambridge, Earl of, 54.
 Camden Society, 164.
 Camden, William, 96.
 Campbell, Lord, 36.
 Canada, 76, 214.
 Canterbury, 164.
 Cape Breton, 10.
 Cape Cod, 8, 35, 125.
 Cape Elizabeth, 76.
 Cape Fear, 4.
 Carack, 245.
 Carentan, 151.
 Carew, 229, 230.
 Carey, Henry, 33.
 Carey, Mary, 33.
 Carey, William, 33, 166.
 Carlaverock, 153.
 Carleton, Mr., 185.
 Carlisle, Earl of, 20, 64.
 Carlton Ride, 156, 158, 159.
 Carr, Sir Robert, 170.
 Cartier, Jacques, 45.
 Catayons, 80, 81.
 Cathay, 80.
 Catherine of Arragon, 160.
 Cave, Eleanor de, 153.
 Cecil Papers, 228, 235, 237, 238, 240,
 241, 242, 243, 246, 247, 249, 250.
 Cecil, Sir Robert, 16, 22, 32, 96, 100,
 110, 229, 231, 233, 234, 235, 236, 238,
 240, 241, 242, 243, 246, 247, 248,
 250, 251.
 Challons, Capt. Henry, 9, 11, 22, 27.
 Champernoun, Francis, 163.
 Champlain, Sieur Samuel de, 14, 19,
 25, 45, 183.
 Chapman, Abraham, 168.
 Charles I., 23, 33, 40, 54, 55, 64, 123,
 201, 214, 245.
 Charles II., 168, 198, 199, 200, 203, 206,
 216, 220.
 Charles, Prince, 20.
 Charlton Manor, 163.
 Chedder, 190.
 Chedder Church, 186.
 Chefapeake Bay, 13.
 Cheshire, 98.
 Chester, 201.
 China, 80.
 Chinawaies, 80, 81.
 Chipping Wycombe, 174.
 Chrifton, 165.
 Clare, Earl of, 198.
 Clarendon, Earl of, 170, 197, 198.
 Clerkenwell, 166, 167, 168.
 Clevedon, 164.
 Clifford, Sir Conyers, 164.
 Clifforde, Capt., 235.
 Cockington, 189, 191.
 Coffin, the Rev. Paul, 8.
 Coke, Sir Edward, 31, 35, 36, 40, 43,
 44, 128.
 Colleton, Sir John, 199, 200.
 Collins, Arthur, 152.
 Colonial Papers, 197, 201, 203, 207.
 Columbus, Christopher, 71, 176, 182.
 Cooke, Jo., 207.
 Cooke, Mildred, 233.
 Coplestone, Joanna, 161.
 Coplestone, Thomas, 161.
 Copper, 126.
 Cork, Earl of, 198.
 Cornwall, 3, 167, 192, 229, 230,
 250.
 Corunna, 230.
 Cotterell, Jane, 150.
 Cotterell, John, 150.
 Cotton, 73.
 Cotton Manuscripts, 85.

Council for planting, ruling, and governing New England, 47, 48, 49, 51, 54, 55, 59, 64, 123.
 County Palatine, 127.
 Court Baron, 139.
 Court de Wyke, 159.
 Court Leet, 139.
 Courtney, Edward, 167.
 Coventry, 155.
 Coventry, Sir Thomas, 31, 40.
 Cranfield, Sir Lionel, 33.
 Crobay, 159.
 Cromwell, Oliver, 57, 199.
 Croome, Dabitot, 31.
 Crouch, Walter, 165.

D.

Dacre, Francis, Lord, 198.
 Danvers, Sir Charles, 119.
 Darrell, Sir Marmaduke, 245, 246.
 Dartmouth, 198.
 Davis, Sir John, 35, 119, 120.
 Day, 46, 47.
 Dean, John Ward, 124.
 Deer, 74, 126.
 Dehamda, 14.
 De la Tour, 55, 56.
 Delaware Bay, 170.
 Delbridge, John, 35.
 Denbigh, 201.
 Deodands, 128, 129.
 Dermer, Capt. Thomas, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 45.
 Derwell, 163.
 Devereaux, Robert, 225.
 Devereaux, Walter, 225.
 Devonshire, 152, 153, 178, 179, 190, 206, 250.

Dieppe, 28.
 Digby, Sir Kenhelm, 31, 33.
 Digges, Sir Dudley, 201.
 Digges, Edward, 200, 201.
 Dillon, 160.
 Doddleton, 98.
 Dodington, Henry, 165.
 Domestic Correspondence, 198, 231, 233.
 Doncaster, Viscount of, 64.
 Donne, 166.
 Dorset, Earl of, 110.
 Dorsetshire, 12, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 158, 162.
 Dorset Street, 110.
 Dover, 199.
 Dover Castle, 199.
 Downton, Wilts, 164.
 Drake, Sir Francis, 230.
 Drury House, 105, 119.
 Drury, Sir William, 163.
 Dublin, 116.
 Dudley, Robert, 164.
 Dudley, Thomas, 62, 209.
 Duncannon Castle, 116.
 Dundalk, Baron, 218.
 Durham, 127.
 Durham House, 93.
 Dutch, the, 41, 46, 47, 48, 72, 170, 229, 246.
 Dutch West India Company, 46.

E.

East Greenwich, 127, 202, 205.
 East Hampton, 161.
 East India Company, 8, 126.
 East Indies, 71, 72.
 Eastlanders, 75.

Edmonds, Sir Clement, 35.
 Edward I., 139, 153.
 Edward III., 157, 158.
 Edward IV., 160.
 Edward VI., 159, 160, 228.
 Effingham, 100, 242.
 Effingham, Charles, Baron of, 100, 242.
 Egerton Manuscripts, the, 210.
 Egerton, Sir Thomas, 98.
 Eleanor, Princess, 153.
 Elias, 169.
 Elizabeth, Lady, 20.
 Elizabeth, Queen, 3, 5, 7, 31, 32, 33, 64,
 99, 164, 228, 229, 237; books relat-
 ing to her reign, 164, 231, 233.
 Ellefmere, Baron, 98.
 England, 2, 4, 6, 7, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20,
 22, 23, 28, 32, 53, 54, 55, 59, 62, 64,
 66, 70, 126, 127, 129, 131, 133, 136,
 137, 139, 140, 144, 146, 151, 160, 162,
 163, 167, 170, 171, 172, 173, 187, 196,
 201, 202, 203, 206, 210, 215, 216, 219,
 230, 237, 242.
 Epenow, 20, 22, 23, 24, 29.
 Epps, William, 29.
 Effex, Earl of, 54, 85, 88, 89, 90,
 92, 93, 95, 96, 99, 104, 109, 110, 115,
 116, 119, 120, 166, 225, 227, 228, 229,
 242.
 Effex House, 93, 95, 96, 98, 109, 110.
 Effexshire, 167, 163, 174.
 Europe, 237.
 Evelyn, John, 219.
 Exeter, 189, 206, 247.

F.

Falkland, Viscount, 33.
 Ferrers, Guy de, 156.

Fife, County of, 64.
 Finch, Baron John, 40.
 Fish, 74, 137, 163.
 Fisheries, 229.
 Fishing, 78.
 Flax, 73.
 Flax Boniton, 190.
 Fleet Lane, 94.
 Fleet Prison, 94.
 Flodden Field, 161, 162.
 Flushing, 229.
 Flyboat, 235.
 Foliot, Margaret, 152.
 Foliot, Tamerton, 152.
 Fowl, 74.
 Foyle, Catherine, 174.
 France, 44, 54, 62, 65, 110, 160, 162,
 180, 232.
 French, 41, 76, 214.
 Friesland, 235.
 Fryeburg, 75.
 Fulford, Sir Francis, 167.
 Fulford, Mary, 167.
 Furs, 79, 80.
 Fynes, Lady Frances, 168.

G.

Gafcony, 153.
 Gatehouse, 85, 106.
 Gates, Elizabeth, 12.
 Gates, Mary, 12.
 Gates, Sir Thomas, 12, 13.
 Gatton, 159.
 Gaveland, 157.
 Genealogist, 160.
 Georges River, 8.
 Gift of God, 13.
 Gilbert, Adrian, 250.

- Gilbert, Dorothy, 166.
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 3, 4, 250.
 Gilbert, Sir John, 16, 250, 251.
 Gilbert, Capt. Raleigh, 13, 14, 16.
 Gilberts, 163.
 Glascock, Sir William, 199.
 Gloucester, 151.
 Gloucestershire, 164.
 Goche, Dr. Barnaby, 54.
 Gold, 126, 128.
 Goodman, 54.
 Goodyear, Moses, 187.
 Gorges, Alexander, 189, 191, 192.
 Gorges, Alice, 165.
 Gorges, Ann, daughter of Edmund, 165.
 Gorges, Ann, daughter of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Ann, daughter of Ferdinando, 174.
 Gorges, Ann, daughter of John, 168.
 Gorges, Ann, daughter of Robert, 186.
 Gorges, Ann, wife of Sir Ferdinando, 151.
 Gorges, Barbara, 186.
 Gorges, Bartholomew, 158.
 Gorges, Cecilia, 168, 174.
 Gorges, Dorothy, daughter of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Dorothy, wife of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Edmund, son of Sir Edmund, 163, 164, 165, 166.
 Gorges, Edmund, son of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Sir Edmund, 160, 161.
 Gorges, Edward, father of Sir Ferdinando, 164.
 Gorges, Edward, son of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Edward, son of Thomas, 189.
 Gorges, Sir Edward, 65, 150, 161, 162.
 Gorges, Eleanor, 156, 157.
 Gorges, Eleanor de, 152, 153.
 Gorges, Elizabeth, daughter of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Edward, 163, 164.
 Gorges, Elizabeth, daughter of Ferdinando, 174.
 Gorges, Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Theobald, 160.
 Gorges, Elizabeth, daughter of Thomas, 189, 191, 192.
 Gorges, Elizabeth, wife of Sir Ferdinando, 150, 164, 167.
 Gorges, Ellen, 167.
 Gorges family, 150, 151.
 Gorges, Ferdinando, son of Ferdinando, 174.
 Gorges, Ferdinando, son of John, 57, 58, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 174, 175, 177, 179, 180, 182, 183, 184, 185, 189, 195, 198, 200, 201, 203, 206, 207, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 218, 219, 221.
 Gorges, Ferdinando, son of Thomas, 189, 190, 191, 192.
 Gorges, Capt. Ferdinando, 186.
 Gorges, Sir Ferdinando, his mistake concerning the Bashabas, 14; error in his narrative, 15; objected to fishing in the North Colony, 34, 35; accused of holding a monopoly, 36, 37, 43; opposed De Tillières, 45; a man of elevated motives, 69; his line extinct, 174; letters to the Earl of Essex, 225-227, 227, 228-229; to Cecil, 229-231, 233-234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 240, 241, 242, 243, 246, 247, 250; to Burghley, 231-233, 249; to the Council, 245; mentioned, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 16, 17, 27, 29, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 56, 57, 71, 72, 74, 75, 76, 81, 85, 92.

- 96, 115, 121, 123, 124, 127, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 150, 151, 164, 166, 167, 168, 170, 173, 175, 177, 178, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 188, 189, 191, 195, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 214, 219, 232.
- Gorges, Florence, 158.
- Gorges, Frances, 165, 166.
- Gorges, Helena, 164, 165.
- Gorges, Henry, son of Edmund, 165.
- Gorges, Henry, son of Robert, 186.
- Gorges, Henry, son of Thomas, 189, 192.
- Gorges, Honoria, 167.
- Gorges, Ifabella, daughter of Edward, 166.
- Gorges, Ifabella, daughter of Thomas, 158.
- Gorges, Jane, daughter of Sir Edmund, 163, 164.
- Gorges, Jane, daughter of John, 168.
- Gorges, Jane, daughter of Sir Theobald, 160.
- Gorges, John, son of Edmund, 165.
- Gorges, John, son of Sir Edmund, 161.
- Gorges, John, son of Sir Ferdinando, 151, 167, 168, 195.
- Gorges, John, son of Henry, 186, 188.
- Gorges, John, son of Thomas, 158, 159.
- Gorges, Margaret, daughter of Edmund, 165.
- Gorges, Margaret, daughter of Sir Edmund, 161.
- Gorges, Mary, daughter of Edmund, 165.
- Gorges, Mary, daughter of Sir Edward, 163, 164.
- Gorges, Mary, daughter of Ferdinando, 174.
- Gorges, Mary, wife of Sir Ferdinando, 167.
- Gorges, Mary, wife of Thomas, 190.
- Gorges, Matilda, 160.
- Gorges, Sir Nicholas, 163, 164, 165.
- Gorges Point, 187.
- Gorges, Ralph de, 7th, 152.
- Gorges, Ralph de, 8th, 153.
- Gorges, Ralph de, 9th, 153, 154, 156.
- Gorges, Ralph de, 10th, 156.
- Gorges, Sir Ralph, 158.
- Gorges, Randolph de, 151, 152, 166.
- Gorges, Richard, son of Ferdinando, 174.
- Gorges, Richard, son of Theobald, 160.
- Gorges, Lord Richard, 174, 218.
- Gorges, Robert, 165.
- Gorges, Capt. Robert, 49, 51, 52, 53, 59, 167, 219, 221.
- Gorges, Dr. Robert, 186, 191.
- Gorges, Sir Robert, 150, 166, 186.
- Gorges, Rose, 189, 192.
- Gorges, Samuel, son of Edmund, 165.
- Gorges, Samuel, son of Edward, 166.
- Gorges, Samuel, son of Sir Edward, 150, 190.
- Gorges, Sufannah, 189, 191.
- Gorges, Sir Theobald, 158, 159, 160, 174.
- Gorges, Sir Theobald Russell, 157-158, 158.
- Gorges, Thomas, son of Ferdinando, 174.
- Gorges, Thomas, son of Henry, 186, 188, 189, 190, 192.
- Gorges, Thomas, son of Ralph de, 152.
- Gorges, Thomas, son of Theobald, 158.
- Gorges, Thomas, son of Thomas, 189, 190, 191.

Gorges, the Rev. Thomas, son of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Sir Thomas, 163, 164.
 Gorges, Sir Tristram, 167.
 Gorges, Walter, son of Sir Edmund, 161.
 Gorges, Walter, son of Sir Theobald, 160.
 Gorges, William, son of Sir Edward, 163, 164.
 Gorges, William, son of Sir Theobald, 158.
 Gorges, William, son of Thomas, 158, 159.
 Gorges, Capt. William, 58.
 Gorges, Winifred, 163.
 Gorgiana, 57.
 Gofnold, Bartholomew, 22.
 Governor and Council of Massachusetts Bay, 170.
 Gray's Inn, 40.
 Great Smead, 191.
 Green, Mary A. E., 152, 153.
 Greenwich, 161.
 Greenwood, Ann, 192.
 Greenwood, Martin, 192.
 Grenville, Sir Richard, 3, 4.
 Greville, Sir Fulke, 31, 32, 237.
 Groton, 62.
 Guienne, Duchy of, 157.
 Guinea, the, 169.

H.

Hakluyt, Richard, 2.
 Hall, 167.
 Hall, Bishop, 191.
 Hamilton, Marquise of, 47, 49, 54, 65.
 Hampton, 219.

Hampton Court, 23.
 Hampton, Joan, 161.
 Hampton, John, 161.
 Harleian Miscellany, 188.
 Harley, Capt. Henry, 20.
 Harlow, Capt. Edward, 20.
 Harrington, Sir John, 5.
 Hartfordshire, 247.
 Hart's College, 166.
 Hartwell, 164.
 Harvard College, 148.
 Hatch, John, 160.
 Hatton, Lady, 36.
 Havana, 10.
 Hay, Sir James, 64.
 Hazard, Ebenezer, 124.
 Heavitree, 189.
 Hemp, 73.
 Henry III., 152.
 Henry IV., 62, 110.
 Henry VI., 159.
 Henry VII., 160.
 Henry VIII., 161, 162, 165.
 Herbert, Sir John, 110.
 Herrera, Anthony, 183.
 Heylyn, 164.
 Hobson, Capt., 23, 26, 27.
 Holland, 47, 173.
 Hollanders, 45, 72.
 Honyton, 247.
 Horrington, 159, 160.
 Hotton, J. C., 189.
 Hounslope, 164.
 Howard, Lady Anne, 161.
 Howard, Catherine, 161.
 Howard, Lord Charles, 100, 242.
 Howard, Lord John, 160, 161.
 Howard, Lord Thomas, 5, 32.
 Howe, Alexander, 200, 201.
 Hubbard, William, 48.

Hudfon, Henry, 45.
 Hudfon River, 45, 47, 64.
 Hugo, the Rev. Thomas, 162.
 Humphrey, John, 62.
 Hungarians, 163.
 Hungary, 7.
 Hunfdon, Baron, 33.
 Hurons, the, 25.
 Hyde, Alice, 186.
 Hyde, Edward, 197, 198.

I.

India, 80.
 Indian Fleet, 243, 245, 247.
 Indians, 19, 20, 75, 81, 176, 179, 183.
 Indies, 10.
 Ireland, 3, 33, 54, 163, 243, 244, 246.
 Iroquois, 25.
 Irvington, 150.
 Island of Canara, 10.
 Island of Capawick, 20, 22, 26, 28, 29,
 125.
 Islands of the Virginians, 73.
 Isle of Purbeck, 161.
 Isles of Shoals, 125.
 Isle of Wight, 23, 152, 157, 198.
 Italy, 32.

J.

James I., 5, 22, 25, 31, 32, 33, 44, 54,
 55, 56, 64, 99, 116, 127, 164, 229, 233,
 245.
 James II., 173.
 James River, 201.
 Java, 72.
 Jeffries, John, 200, 201.
 Joanna, Princess, 153.

John, King of England, 152.
 John, John Fitz, 157.
 Johnfon, Edward, 57, 175, 181, 183.
 Jones, Christopher, 165.
 Jones, Matthias, 165.
 Jones, Mr., 47.
 Jones, the Rev. William, 165.

K.

Kendall, Thomas, 199, 200, 201.
 Kennebec River, 123, 125, 214.
 Kent, 127.
 Kingston, Russell, 156, 157.
 Knighton-Gorges, 157.
 Kydwell, Sir Morgan, 161.

L.

Laconia, 123, 207.
 Ladock, 167.
 Laet, Jean de, 183.
 Lake Champlain, 123.
 Lambeth, 158.
 Lancaster, Earl of, 154, 155.
 Landrake, 167.
 Landdowne Manuscripts, 163, 164, 188.
 Lead, 126.
 Lee, Sir Henry, 237.
 Leere, Sir Peter, 199.
 Leicefter, Earl of, 164, 225.
 Leighs, 59.
 Leland, John, 161.
 Lennox, Duke of, 47, 49, 54, 64.
 L'Escarbot, Marc, 14, 19, 75, 76, 183.
 Levifon, Sir John, 96.
 Leyden, 48.
 Lillifdon, 160.
 Lincoln, Countefs of, 47.

Lincoln, Earl of, 62, 168, 198.
 Lifbon, 241.
 Litchfield, 23.
 Littlecoat, Simon, 161.
 Littlecote, 245.
 Little Sodbury, 164.
 Loaks, 174.
 London, 12, 20, 22, 45, 46, 94, 119, 155,
 166, 167, 174, 214, 217, 237.
 Londonderry, 186.
 Long Ashton, 149.
 Low Countries, 164.
 Lower Ashton, 167.
 Loxton, 165.
 Lucy, Sir John, 96.
 Ludgate, 164.
 Luttrell, John, 166.
 Lygon, Cicely, 165.
 Lygon, William, 165.
 Lyttleton, Mr., 119, 121.

M.

Madresfield, 165.
 Magdalen College, 54.
 Maine, 65, 76, 123, 125, 129, 168, 169,
 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 186, 189,
 190, 191, 196, 200, 202, 203, 207, 213,
 214, 215, 220, 221.
 Maine Historical Society, 8, 55, 173,
 194.
 Major, Mr., 239.
 Malaga, 26.
 Malamake River, 65.
 Mallack, Rawlin, 189, 191, 192.
 Mallack, Roger, 189.
 Manchester, Earl of, 198.
 Manida, 8, 11.
 Manfell, Sir Robert, 54.

Marlborough, Earl of, 198.
 Martha's Vineyard, 20.
 Martyn, Capt. John, 30.
 Mary and John, 13.
 Maryland, 32.
 Mary, Queen of England, 32, 228.
 Mary, Queen of Scotland, 164.
 Mafon, Capt. John, 55, 56, 57, 65, 123,
 169, 217.
 Mafon, Robert, 40, 171, 172, 210, 211,
 212.
 Massachusetts Archives, 124, 194.
 Massachusetts Bay, 50, 221.
 Massachusetts Bay Colony, 47, 49, 52,
 59, 62, 148, 168, 170, 172, 173, 196,
 203, 204, 205, 207, 209, 215, 216, 217,
 218, 221.
 Massachusetts Historical Society, 49.
 Massachusetts Indians, 76.
 Maffe, P. Ennemond, 19.
 Mather, Cotton, 49.
 Mathews, Mafter, 24.
 Maurice, Prince, 46.
 Maverick, Samuel, 170.
 Mawoolhen, 76.
 Maximilian II., 163.
 Mayflower, 47.
 Meade, Sir John, 168.
 Meade, Mary, 168.
 Mediterranean Sea, 245.
 Mennes, Sir John, 199.
 Mercurius, Publicus, the, 185.
 Merrimac River, 65, 123.
 Middlefex, Earl of, 33.
 Middle Temple, the, 40.
 Middleton, Earl of, 199, 200.
 Minehead, 191.
 Moasham, 76.
 Mondragon, 228.
 Monk, General, 206.

Monmouth, Duke of, 173.
 Monomack River, 65.
 Moody, 174
 Morgan, John, 164.
 Morice, Sir William, 206.
 Morton, 47, 48.
 Morville, Eleanor de, 152, 153.
 Moshoquen, 76.
 Mount Desert, 19.
 Mowbray, Baron, 198.
 Mulgrave, Lord, 64.

N.

Nantucket, 29.
 Naffau, 46.
 Naunton, Sir Robert, 31, 33, 99.
 Nautican, 29, 125.
 Neill, Edward D., 36, 126.
 Netherlands, 23.
 New Amsterdam, 170.
 Newcastle, Earl of, 54.
 Newcastle-upon-Tyne, 154, 155.
 New England, 8, 14, 25, 26, 27, 28, 36,
 48, 51, 52, 53, 56, 57, 63, 73, 74, 166,
 167, 168, 169, 171, 172, 173, 177, 179,
 181, 183, 184, 186, 189, 191, 196, 200,
 201, 203, 207, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214,
 215, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221.
 Newfoundland, 27, 28, 32, 55, 78.
 New Hampshire, 171, 172, 210, 217.
 Newichewannock River, 124, 125.
 New Netherland, 46.
 New Plymouth, 49, 50. *See* Plymouth,
 Mafs.
 New Scotland, 56.
 New Somersetshire, 166.
 Newton, Sir Henry, 162.
 Newton, Sir John, 162.

Newton, Mary, 162.
 Newton, Thomas, 161.
 New York, 48, 170.
 Nichols, John, 164.
 Nonconformists, 62.
 Norfolk, 163.
 Norfolk, John, Duke of, 161.
 Norfolk, Thomas, Duke of, 161.
 Normandy, 151, 152.
 Northampton, 62.
 Northampton, Lord, 33.
 Northampton, Marchioness of, 164,
 174.
 Northants, 164.
 North Carolina, 169.
 North Cheriton, 159.
 North Colony, 31, 34, 35, 36.
 Northern Plantation, 30.
 North River, 46.
 Norton, Agnes, 158.
 Norton, Francis, 57.
 Norton, Thomas, 158.
 Nottingham, Earl of, 100, 242.
 Nova France, 45.
 Nova Scotia, 55.
 Ntahanada, 14.

O.

Ogungigg (Ogunquit) River, 191.
 Oldhall, Mary, 161.
 Oldhall, Sir William, 160.
 Old James, 198.
 Old South Church, 148.
 Orcheston, 161.
 Ottawas, 25.
 Oviedo, 183.
 Oxford, 189.

P.

Palatine, Prince, 20.
 Palmer, Geoffrey, 169, 201, 203.
 Parham, 199.
 Pascataqua. *See* Piscataqua.
 Patent of New England, 35, 39, 43.
 Pearls, 126, 128.
 Peche, Sir John, 156.
 Pemaquid, 8, 76.
 Penobscot Indians, 75, 76.
 Penobscot River, 75.
 Percival, James, 165.
 Phillips, Sir Robert, 44.
 Pierce, John, 46.
 Pigwacket, 75.
 Pilchards, 229.
 Pilgrim Hall, 47.
 Pilgrims, 47, 48.
 Pinzon, Vincent, 71.
 Pirates, Algerine, 33.
 Piscataqua, 170, 208.
 Piscataqua Grant, 123.
 Piscataqua Harbor, 124, 125.
 Piscataqua River, 75, 123, 125, 214.
 Pitch, 73.
 Pitcorthie, 64.
 Plymouth Council, 219.
 Plymouth, England, 4, 7, 12, 13, 28, 30,
 47, 58, 59, 115, 156, 178, 179, 187, 206,
 231, 233, 234, 236, 238, 240, 241, 242,
 243, 244, 246, 247, 248, 250, 251.
 Plymouth, Mafs., 47, 49, 50, 59.
 Plymouth Patent, 25.
 Pointz, Sir Anthony, 162.
 Pointz, Mary, 162.
 Poole, Sir Gyles, 163.
 Popham Colony, 14, 20, 22.
 Popham, Sir Francis, 15, 16.
 Popham, Capt. George, 13.

Popham, Sir John, 11, 15, 16, 98, 245.
 Portland, 76.
 Portland, Jerome, Earl of, 198.
 Portland, Richard, Earl of, 198.
 Portsmouth, 57.
 Portugal, 71; the king of, 71.
 Poundstock, 192.
 Povey, Thomas, 199, 200.
 Preston, battle of, 54.
 Presumpscot River, 76.
 Prince Society, 124.
 Pring, Capt. Martin, 11, 14.
 Privy Council, 30, 32, 33.
 Provincial Records of New Hampshire,
 217.
 Public Record Office, 22, 29, 55, 92,
 124, 152, 164, 169, 194, 197, 198, 201,
 207, 214, 217, 218.
 Purchase, the Rev. Samuel, 30, 76.
 Puritans, 59.
 Pym, Charles, 199, 200.

Q.

Queen's Guard, 96.
 Quo Warranto, 216.

R.

Raleigh, Sir Walter, 3, 4, 36, 92, 93, 94,
 95, 106, 163, 232, 250.
 Randolph, Edward, 172, 173.
 Rawlinson Manuscripts, 162.
 Reynell, Sir Carew, 115.
 Richard II., 158.
 Richard III., 160.
 Richmond, Duke of, 64.
 Richmond, Earl of, 54.
 Richmond Island, 187.

Ripon, 156.
 River Mauritius, 46.
 River Meuse, 229.
 River of St. Johns, 55.
 River of the Mountains, 46.
 River Ogarnogg, 191.
 Rivière du Gaît, 65.
 Roanoke Island, 4.
 Rocroft. *See* Rowcroft.
 Rodolph II., 7.
 Roe, Sir Thomas, 35.
 Roman Catholics, 128.
 Rofier, James, 7, 8.
 Rotterdam, 173, 229.
 Rouen, 166.
 Rowcroft, Capt. Edward, 26, 27, 28, 29.
 Rundall, Thomas, 8.
 Ruske, 245.
 Ruffell, Eleanor, 157.
 Ruffell family, 157.
 Ruffell Houfe, 163.
 Ruffell, Lady, 163.
 Ruffell, Sir Maurice, 157.
 Ruffell, Sir Ralph, 157.
 Ruffell, Sir Theobald, 156, 157.
 Ruffell, William, 157.
 Ruffell, Sir William, 156, 157.
 Rye, William B., 164.
 Rymer's *Fœdera*, 8, 152.

S.

Saco River, 75.
 Sagadahoc River, 14, 15, 28, 65, 125.
 Sagamores, 74, 75.
 St. Bride's Church, 174.
 St. Christopher's, 29.
 St. James' Church, 166, 168.
 St. John de Porterico, 10.

St. John's Fort, 55.
 St. Leger, Sir Anthony, 164.
 St. Margaret's Church, 165, 167, 168, 174.
 St. Martin's Church, 164.
 St. Patrick's Church, 163.
 St. Paul's Church, 96.
 St. Sepulchre's Church, 167.
 Salisbury Cathedral, 164.
 Salisbury Court, 110.
 Salisbury, Earl of, 29, 233.
 Salmon Falls River, 124.
 Sandford, Martyn, 188.
 Sandford, Mary, 188.
 Sandwich, 199.
 Sandys, Sir Edwin, 35.
 Sassenow, 14.
 Satchfield, William, 150.
 Saunders, Mr., 242.
 Savage, James, 188.
 Savages, 69, 75.
 Say and Sele, Viscount, 198.
 Scotland, 5, 54, 55, 56, 162.
 Sedgemore, 173.
 Shakspeare, William, 20, 22, 31.
 Shatemuc, 46.
 Sheffield, Baron, 47, 64.
 Siditon, 154.
 Silver, 126, 128.
 Skettwarroes, 8, 14.
 Slafter, the Rev. Edmund F., 65.
 Smith, Capt. John, 75.
 Smyth, Elizabeth, 167.
 Smyth, Sir Hugh, 167.
 Snachenberg, Helen, 164.
 Snachenberg, Wolfe, 164.
 Socage, tenures in, 127.
 Society of Antiquaries, 85.
 Sockbigones, 75, 76.
 Sokokis, 75.

- Somerford, 174.
 Somerset, 191.
 Somerset, Edward, 32.
 Somerset Militia, 188.
 Somersetshire, 149, 150, 155, 158, 159,
 162, 164, 186, 188.
 Somers, Sir George, 12, 13.
 Somers Tracts, 40.
 Southampton, 23, 158, 161.
 Southampton, Earl of, 7, 22, 23, 35,
 119, 120, 198.
 South Cheriton, 159.
 Southern Colony, 35, 47.
 Southern Plantation, 30.
 Southwell, Frances, 163.
 Southwell, Mary, 163.
 Spain, 4, 10, 20, 26, 71, 110, 228, 230;
 the king of, 71.
 Spaniards, 176, 230.
 Spanish, 41.
 Sparchford, Cicely, 164.
 Sparchford, Thomas, 164.
 Speedwell, 47.
 Speke, Dorothy, 166.
 Speke, Sir John, 166.
 Squirrels, 22.
 Stafford, 164.
 Stafford, Edward, 160.
 Stafford, Lord, 163, 164.
 Stallenge, William, 29, 243, 245, 246.
 Star Chamber, the, 197.
 State Papers, 152, 231, 233, 236.
 States-General, 12.
 Stawvert, 235.
 Stepney, 154.
 Stewart, James, 64.
 Stirling, Earl of, 55, 169, 172.
 Stow, John, 94.
 Strachey Papers, 159.
 Strachey, William, 14.
 Strigonium, 7.
 Stuart, Efme, 54.
 Stuart, Lodowick, 54.
 Stuarts, 198.
 Sturminster Marshall, 153, 160.
 Sturtons, 24.
 Suffolk County, 62.
 Sugar, 73.
 Sulphur, 126.
 Summer Islands, 13.
 Sumner, William, 170.
 Surrey, 164.
 Suffex, 168.
 Swampscot, 62.
 Swedes, 170.
 Swiftsure, 164.
 Sydenham, Sufannah, 188.
 Sydney Papers, 96, 116.
 Sydney, Sir Philip, 31, 32.
 Sydney, Sir Robert, 116.

T.

- Tadoufac, 45.
 Tahanedo, 14.
 Tamworth, 152.
 Tangier, 200.
 Tar, 73.
 Tarentines, 75, 76.
 Tasquantum, 8.
 Taunton, 188.
 Taxes yielded to favorites, 229.
 Testa de Nevil, 152.
 Thames, 16, 93.
 Theobalds, 31.
 Tickenham, 164.
 Tillières, Comte de, 45.
 Tin, 126.
 Tint, John, 191.
 Tisquantum, 27.

Tour, Eleanor de la, 157.
 Tower of London, 44, 53, 59, 111, 163.
 Trelawny Papers, 173.
 Trelawny, Robert, 187.
 Trenchard, Francis, 166.
 Tributes to favorites, 229.
 Tunny, 245.
 Turks, 3, 7, 163.
 Tutswell, 166.
 Tynte, Edward, 166.

U.

United Netherlands, 12.
 United States, 13.
 Usher, John, 173, 216, 217, 220.

V.

Venables, Col. Robert, 199.
 Verrazano, 45.
 Vespucci, Amerigo, 71.
 Vines, Richard, 18, 19, 58, 187.
 Virginia, 4, 12, 13, 22, 26, 28, 29, 31, 35,
 46, 61, 73, 177, 201.
 Virginia Company, 22, 23, 29, 30, 31,
 34, 47, 48.
 Virginia, 126.
 Vivian, John, 165.

W.

Wadham College, 189.
 Wake, Archbishop, 164.
 Wake, John, 164.
 Walshe, Ann, 164.
 Walshe, Sir John, 164.
 Walton, Izaak, 199.

Wanape, 23.
 Wanfrow, 186.
 Wardour, Baron of, 7.
 Warner, Mr., 185.
 Warner, Sir Thomas, 29.
 Warwick, Guy, Earl of, 154.
 Warwick, Robert, Earl of, 47, 49, 59,
 164.
 Warwickshire, 152.
 Washington, George, 62.
 Watch, 158.
 Waymouth, Capt. George, 7, 8.
 Wells, 149, 150, 165.
 Wendon-Lofts, 168.
 West Hampnett, 168.
 West Harptrey, 150.
 West Indies, 4, 46, 71, 171, 172, 198,
 199, 200.
 Westminster, 154, 155, 167, 168, 174,
 197.
 Westminster Hall, 106.
 Weston-in-Gordano, 165.
 Wheat, 128.
 Whitehall, 197, 199, 206, 217, 218,
 245.
 Whittington, Sir Richard, 33.
 Willard, Josiah, 148.
 Willard, Samuel, 148.
 Willett, Thomas, 48.
 William I., 151.
 Willoughby, Lord, 198, 199.
 Wilsford, Duke of, 186.
 Wiltshire, 161, 174, 186.
 Winchester, 158.
 Wincob, John, 47.
 Windham, 163.
 Windfor, 64.
 Winford, 150.
 Winslow, Edward, 48.
 Winter, Admiral, 163.

Winter, John, 187.
Winthrop, John, 62, 186, 209.
Wolfeley, Sir Robert, 148.
Worcester, 54.
Worcester, Earl of, 32, 99.
Worcestershire, 31, 166.
Wormley, 199.
Worsley, Richard, 152.
Wraxall, 150, 152, 158, 161, 162, 164,
165, 166, 167, 190.
Wraxall Church, 159.
Writtle, 151, 167.
Wrokefhale, 152, 161.
Wrokefhale. Richard de, 152.

Wyke, 161.
Wyke, Agnes de, 159.

X.

Ximenes, Francis, 183.

Y.

York, Duke of, 159, 160, 170.
York, England, 154, 156.
York House, 98.
York, Maine, 57, 189.
York Records, 24, 191.
Yorkshire, 208.



ERRATUM.

Vol. I., page 174, line 5, for "21st March," read "25th March."

10125²
Publications of the Prince Society.



SIR FERDINANDO GORGES

AND

HIS PROVINCE OF MAINE.

VOLUME II.

Council of the Prince Society.

1890.

EDMUND F. SLAFTER.

JOHN WARD DEAN.

WILLIAM B. TRASK.

CHARLES H. BELL.

JAMES P. BAXTER.

ROBERT N. TOPPAN.

DAVID GREENE HASKINS, JR.

ELBRIDGE H. GOSS.

Center

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 013 983 552 9 ●